

Submitted by the Council to the Members of  
The American Law Institute  
for Consideration at the Ninety-Sixth Annual Meeting on May 20, 21, and 22, 2019



PRINCIPLES OF THE LAW  
POLICING

---

*Tentative Draft No. 2*

(March 18, 2019)

---

**SUBJECTS COVERED**

- CHAPTER 1 General Principles (§§ 1.01-1.07)
- CHAPTER 4 Police Encounters
- CHAPTER 10 Eyewitness Identifications
- CHAPTER 11 Police Questioning
- APPENDIX A Black Letter of Tentative Draft No. 2
- APPENDIX B Other Relevant Black Letter

THE EXECUTIVE OFFICE  
THE AMERICAN LAW INSTITUTE  
4025 Chestnut Street  
Philadelphia, PA 19104-3099  
Telephone: (215) 243-1600 • Fax: (215) 243-1636  
E-mail: [ali@ali.org](mailto:ali@ali.org) • Website: <http://www.ali.org>

©2019 BY THE AMERICAN LAW INSTITUTE  
ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

---

As of the date of publication, this Draft has not been considered by the members of The American Law Institute and does not represent the position of the Institute on any of the issues with which it deals. The action, if any, taken by the members with respect to this Draft may be ascertained by consulting the Annual Proceedings of the Institute, which are published following each Annual Meeting.

©2019 by The American Law Institute  
Tentative draft – not approved

# The American Law Institute

DAVID F. LEVI, *President*  
ROBERTA COOPER RAMO, *Chair of the Council*  
DOUGLAS LAYCOCK, *1st Vice President*  
LEE H. ROSENTHAL, *2nd Vice President*  
WALLACE B. JEFFERSON, *Treasurer*  
PAUL L. FRIEDMAN, *Secretary*  
RICHARD L. REVESZ, *Director*  
STEPHANIE A. MIDDLETON, *Deputy Director*

## COUNCIL

KIM J. ASKEW, K&L Gates, Dallas, TX  
JOSÉ I. ASTIGARRAGA, Reed Smith, Miami, FL  
DONALD B. AYER, Jones Day, Washington, DC  
SCOTT BALES, Arizona Supreme Court, Phoenix, AZ  
JOHN H. BEISNER, Skadden, Arps, Slate, Meagher & Flom, Washington, DC  
JOHN B. BELLINGER III, Arnold & Porter Kaye Scholer LLP, Washington, DC  
AMELIA H. BOSS, Drexel University Thomas R. Kline School of Law, Philadelphia, PA  
ELIZABETH J. CABRASER, Lief Cabraser Heimann & Bernstein, San Francisco, CA  
EVAN R. CHESLER, Cravath, Swaine & Moore, New York, NY  
MARIANO-FLORENTINO CUÉLLAR, California Supreme Court, San Francisco, CA  
IVAN K. FONG, 3M Company, St. Paul, MN  
KENNETH C. FRAZIER, Merck & Co., Inc., Kenilworth, NJ  
PAUL L. FRIEDMAN, U.S. District Court, District of Columbia, Washington, DC  
STEVEN S. GENSLER, University of Oklahoma College of Law, Norman, OK  
ABBE R. GLUCK, Yale Law School, New Haven, CT  
YVONNE GONZALEZ ROGERS, U.S. District Court, Northern District of California, Oakland, CA  
ANTON G. HAJJAR, Chevy Chase, MD  
TERESA WILTON HARMON, Sidley Austin, Chicago, IL  
NATHAN L. HECHT, Texas Supreme Court, Austin, TX  
WILLIAM C. HUBBARD, Nelson Mullins Riley & Scarborough, Columbia, SC  
SAMUEL ISSACHAROFF, New York University School of Law, New York, NY  
KETANJI BROWN JACKSON, U.S. District Court for the District of Columbia, Washington, DC  
WALLACE B. JEFFERSON, Alexander Dubose & Jefferson LLP, Austin, TX  
GREGORY P. JOSEPH, Joseph Hage Aaronson LLC, New York, NY  
MICHELE C. KANE, The Walt Disney Company, Burbank, CA  
HAROLD HONGJU KOH, Yale Law School, New Haven, CT  
CAROLYN B. KUHL, Superior Court of California, County of Los Angeles, Los Angeles, CA  
CAROLYN B. LAMM, White & Case, Washington, DC  
DEREK P. LANGHAUSER, Office of the Governor, Augusta, ME  
DOUGLAS LAYCOCK, University of Virginia School of Law, Charlottesville, VA;  
University of Texas at Austin School of Law, Austin, TX  
CAROL F. LEE, Taconic Capital Advisors, New York, NY  
DAVID F. LEVI, Duke University School of Law, Durham, NC  
LANCE LIEBMAN\*, Columbia Law School, New York, NY  
GOODWIN LIU, California Supreme Court, San Francisco, CA  
RAYMOND J. LOHIER, JR., U.S. Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, New York, NY  
GERARD E. LYNCH, U.S. Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, New York, NY  
MARGARET H. MARSHALL, Choate Hall & Stewart, Boston, MA  
LORI A. MARTIN, WilmerHale, New York, NY  
TROY A. MCKENZIE, New York University School of Law, New York, NY  
M. MARGARET MCKEOWN, U.S. Court of Appeals, Ninth Circuit, San Diego, CA  
JUDITH A. MILLER, Chevy Chase, MD  
PATRICIA ANN MILLETT, U.S. Court of Appeals, District of Columbia Circuit, Washington, DC  
JANET NAPOLITANO, University of California, Oakland, CA  
KATHRYN A. OBERLY, District of Columbia Court of Appeals (retired), Washington, DC  
KATHLEEN M. O'SULLIVAN, Perkins Coie, Seattle, WA

\**Director Emeritus*

STEPHANIE E. PARKER, Jones Day, Atlanta, GA  
STUART RABNER, New Jersey Supreme Court, Trenton, NJ  
ROBERTA COOPER RAMO\*, Modrall Sperleng, Albuquerque, NM  
DAVID W. RIVKIN, Debevoise & Plimpton, New York, NY  
DANIEL B. RODRIGUEZ, Northwestern University Pritzker School of Law, Chicago, IL  
LEE H. ROSENTHAL, U.S. District Court, Southern District of Texas, Houston, TX  
GARY L. SASSO, Carlton Fields, Tampa, FL  
ANTHONY J. SCIRICA, U.S. Court of Appeals, Third Circuit, Philadelphia, PA  
MARSHA E. SIMMS, Weil, Gotshal & Manges (retired), New York, NY  
ROBERT H. SITKOFF, Harvard Law School, Cambridge, MA  
JANE STAPLETON, Christ's College, University of Cambridge, Cambridge, England  
LAURA STEIN, The Clorox Company, Oakland, CA  
LARRY S. STEWART, Stewart Tilghman Fox Bianchi & Cain, Miami, FL  
ELIZABETH S. STONG, U.S. Bankruptcy Court, Eastern District of New York, Brooklyn, NY  
CATHERINE T. STRUVE, University of Pennsylvania Law School, Philadelphia, PA  
JEFFREY S. SUTTON, U.S. Court of Appeals, Sixth Circuit, Columbus, OH  
SARAH S. VANCE, U.S. District Court, Eastern District of Louisiana, New Orleans, LA  
SETH P. WAXMAN, WilmerHale, Washington, DC  
STEVEN O. WEISE, Proskauer Rose, Los Angeles, CA  
DIANE P. WOOD, U.S. Court of Appeals, Seventh Circuit, Chicago, IL

#### COUNCIL EMERITI

KENNETH S. ABRAHAM, University of Virginia School of Law, Charlottesville, VA  
SHIRLEY S. ABRAHAMSON, Wisconsin Supreme Court, Madison, WI  
PHILIP S. ANDERSON, Williams & Anderson, Little Rock, AR  
SUSAN FRELICH APPLETON, Washington University School of Law, St. Louis, MO  
SHEILA L. BIRNBAUM, Dechert LLP, New York, NY  
ALLEN D. BLACK, Fine, Kaplan and Black, Philadelphia, PA  
MICHAEL BOUDIN, U.S. Court of Appeals, First Circuit, Boston, MA  
WILLIAM M. BURKE, Shearman & Sterling (retired), Costa Mesa, CA  
GERHARD CASPER, Stanford University, Stanford, CA  
EDWARD H. COOPER, University of Michigan Law School, Ann Arbor, MI  
N. LEE COOPER, Maynard, Cooper & Gale, Birmingham, AL  
GEORGE H. T. DUDLEY, Dudley, Topper and Feuerzeig, St. Thomas, U.S. VI  
CHRISTINE M. DURHAM, Utah Supreme Court (retired), Salt Lake City, UT  
CONRAD K. HARPER, Simpson Thacher & Bartlett (retired), New York, NY  
D. BROCK HORNBY, U.S. District Court, District of Maine, Portland, ME  
MARY KAY KANE, University of California, Hastings College of the Law, San Francisco, CA  
CAROLYN DINEEN KING, U.S. Court of Appeals, Fifth Circuit, Houston, TX  
PIERRE N. LEVAL, U.S. Court of Appeals, Second Circuit, New York, NY  
BETSY LEVIN, Washington, DC  
HANS A. LINDE, Portland, OR  
MARTIN LIPTON, Wachtell, Lipton, Rosen & Katz, New York, NY  
MYLES V. LYNK, Arizona State University, Sandra Day O'Connor College of Law, Phoenix, AZ  
JOHN J. MCKETTA III, Graves, Dougherty, Hearon & Moody, Austin, TX  
ROBERT H. MUNDHEIM, Shearman & Sterling, New York, NY  
HARVEY S. PERLMAN, University of Nebraska College of Law, Lincoln, NE  
ELLEN ASH PETERS, Connecticut Supreme Court (retired), Hartford, CT  
MARY M. SCHROEDER, U.S. Court of Appeals, Ninth Circuit, Phoenix, AZ  
ROBERT A. STEIN, University of Minnesota Law School, Minneapolis, MN  
MICHAEL TRAYNOR\*\*, Cobalt LLP, Berkeley, CA  
BILL WAGNER, Wagner McLaughlin, Tampa, FL  
WILLIAM H. WEBSTER, Milbank, Tweed, Hadley & McCloy, Washington, DC  
HERBERT P. WILKINS, Concord, MA

*\*President Emeritus*

*\*\*President Emeritus and Chair of the Council Emeritus*

**Principles of the Law, Policing  
Tentative Draft No. 2**

Comments and Suggestions Invited

We welcome written comments on this draft. They may be submitted via the website [project page](#) or sent via email to [PLPIcomments@ali.org](mailto:PLPIcomments@ali.org). Comments will be forwarded directly to the Reporters, the Director, and the Deputy Director. You may also send comments via standard mail; contact information appears below.

Unless expressed otherwise in the submission, individuals who submit comments authorize The American Law Institute to retain the submitted material in its files and archives, and to copy, distribute, publish, and otherwise make it available to others, with appropriate credit to the author. Comments will be accessible on the website's [project page](#) as soon as they are posted by ALI staff. You must be signed in to submit or view comments.

Reporter

Professor Barry Friedman  
New York University School of Law  
40 Washington Square South  
Room 317  
New York, NY 10012-1005  
Email: [barry.friedman@nyu.edu](mailto:barry.friedman@nyu.edu)

Director

Professor Richard L. Revesz  
The Executive Office  
THE AMERICAN LAW INSTITUTE  
4025 Chestnut Street  
Philadelphia, PA 19104-3099  
Email: [director@ALI.org](mailto:director@ALI.org)

Deputy Director

Ms. Stephanie A. Middleton  
The Executive Office  
THE AMERICAN LAW INSTITUTE  
4025 Chestnut Street  
Philadelphia, PA 19104-3099  
Email: [smiddleton@ALI.org](mailto:smiddleton@ALI.org)

Associate Reporters

Professor Brandon L. Garrett  
Duke University School of Law  
210 Science Drive  
Durham, NC 27708-9985  
Email: [bgarrett@law.duke.edu](mailto:bgarrett@law.duke.edu)

Professor Rachel A. Harmon  
University of Virginia School of Law  
580 Massie Road  
Room WB379  
Charlottesville, VA 22903-1738  
Email: [rharmon@virginia.edu](mailto:rharmon@virginia.edu)

Professor Tracey L. Meares  
Yale Law School  
127 Wall Street  
Room L35  
New Haven, CT 06511-8918  
Email: [tracey.meares@yale.edu](mailto:tracey.meares@yale.edu)

Professor Christopher Slobogin  
Vanderbilt University Law School  
131 21st Ave South, Floor 1  
Nashville, TN 37203-1181  
Email: [c.slobogin@law.vanderbilt.edu](mailto:c.slobogin@law.vanderbilt.edu)

Project Fellow

Professor Maria Ponomarenko  
New York University School of Law  
40 Washington Square South  
Room 225  
New York, NY 10012-1005  
Email: [maria.ponomarenko@nyu.edu](mailto:maria.ponomarenko@nyu.edu)

## Reporters' Conflicts of Interest

The project's Reporters may have been involved in other engagements on issues within the scope of the project; all Reporters are asked to disclose any conflicts of interest, or their appearance, in accord with the Policy Statement and Procedures on Conflicts of Interest with Respect to Institute Projects.



## Principles of the Law, Policing

### REPORTER

BARRY FRIEDMAN, New York University School of Law, New York, NY

### ASSOCIATE REPORTERS

BRANDON L. GARRETT, Duke University School of Law, Durham, NC  
RACHEL A. HARMON, University of Virginia School of Law, Charlottesville, VA  
TRACEY L. MEARES, Yale Law School, New Haven, CT  
CHRISTOPHER SLOBOGIN, Vanderbilt University Law School, Nashville, TN

### PROJECT FELLOW

MARIA PONOMARENKO, New York University School of Law, New York, NY

### ADVISERS

ART ACEVEDO, Houston Police Department, Houston, TX  
HASSAN ADEN, The Aden Group, Public Safety Consulting, Alexandria, VA  
SCOTT BALES, Arizona Supreme Court, Phoenix, AZ  
KEVIN BANKSTON, New America, Washington, DC  
MICHAEL BOSWORTH, MacAndrews & Forbes, New York, NY  
MICHAEL R. BROMWICH, The Bromwich Group, Washington, DC  
BRIAN BUCHNER, National Association for Civilian Oversight of Law Enforcement, Tucson, AZ  
GREGG COSTA, U.S. Court of Appeals, Fifth Circuit, Houston, TX  
MARIANO-FLORENTINO CUÉLLAR, California Supreme Court, San Francisco, CA  
MICHAEL A. DAVIS, Northeastern University, Boston, MA  
BRANDON DEL POZO, Burlington Police Department, Burlington, VT  
ADRIAN DIAZ, Seattle Police Department, Seattle, WA  
JAMES M. DOYLE, Bassil Klovee & Budreau, Boston, MA  
ZACHARY T. FARDON, U.S. Attorney's Office, Northern District of Illinois, Chicago, IL  
ANDREW G. FERGUSON, University of the District of Columbia, David A. Clarke School of Law, Washington, DC  
KENNETH C. FRAZIER, Merck & Co., Inc., Kenilworth, NJ  
GEORGE GASCON, San Francisco District Attorney's Office, San Francisco, CA  
MITCHELL S. GOLDBERG, U.S. District Court, Eastern District of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia, PA  
VANITA GUPTA, Leadership Conference for Civil and Human Rights, Washington, DC  
ROBERT C. HAAS, Police Commissioner (retired), Cambridge Police, Dover, MA  
WILLIAM C. HUBBARD, Nelson Mullins Riley & Scarborough, Columbia, SC  
SHERRILYN IFILL, NAACP Legal Defense and Educational Fund, Inc., New York, NY  
CRAIG ISCOE, Superior Court of the District of Columbia, Washington, DC  
ADALBERTO J. JORDAN, U.S. Court of Appeals, Eleventh Circuit, Miami, FL  
NOLA JOYCE, Philadelphia Police Department, Philadelphia, PA  
ORIN S. KERR, University of Southern California, Gould School of Law, Los Angeles, CA  
MIRIAM A. KRINSKY, Fair and Just Prosecution, Los Angeles, CA  
CHRISTY LOPEZ, Georgetown Law Center, Washington, DC  
CYNTHIA LUM, George Mason University, Fairfax, VA  
JOHN G. MALCOLM, The Heritage Foundation, Washington, DC  
ANNE M. MILGRAM, New York University School of Law, New York, NY  
SYLVIA M. MOIR, Tempe Police Department, Tempe, AZ  
ALEXANDRA NATAPOFF, University of California, Irvine School of Law, Los Angeles, CA  
CLARK M. NEILY, CATO Institute, Washington, DC  
BRITTANY PACKNETT, Campaign Zero, Florissant, MO  
SAMANTHA PAILCA, Microsoft, Redmond, WA  
SUE RAHR, Washington State Criminal Justice Training Commission, Seattle, WA  
CHARLES H. RAMSEY, Police Commissioner (retired), Philadelphia Police Department, Philadelphia, PA  
HENRY R. REEVE, Office of the District Attorney, Eighteenth Judicial District, Centennial, CO  
NORMAN L. REIMER, National Association of Criminal Defense Lawyers, Washington, DC

GARY L. SASSO, Carlton Fields, Tampa, FL  
S. ANDREW SCHAFFER, New York University School of Law, New York, NY  
JOANNA C. SCHWARTZ, University of California, Los Angeles School of Law, Los Angeles, CA  
DARPANA SHETH, Institute for Justice, Arlington, VA  
STEPHEN WM. SMITH, Stanford Law School, Center for Internet and Society, Palo Alto, CA  
SEAN SMOOT, Illinois Police Benevolent and Protective Association, Springfield, IL  
CHRISTOPHER SOGHOIAN, American Civil Liberties Union, Washington, DC  
DARREL STEPHENS, Major Cities Chiefs Police Association, Charlotte, NC  
GEOFFREY R. STONE, University of Chicago Law School, Chicago, IL  
SETH STOUGHTON, University of South Carolina School of Law, Columbia, SC  
J. SCOTT THOMSON, Camden Police, Camden, NJ  
NINA VINIK, The Joyce Foundation, Gun Violence Prevention Program, Chicago, IL  
SAMUEL WALKER, University of Nebraska at Omaha, Omaha, NE  
ROBERT WASSERMAN, Policy Partners, West Tisbury, MA  
ANDREW WEISSMANN, U.S. Department of Justice, Washington, DC

#### LIAISONS

*For International Association of Chiefs of Police*

TERRENCE CUNNINGHAM, Alexandria, VA

*For the Police Foundation*

JIM BURCH, Washington, DC



## MEMBERS CONSULTATIVE GROUP

### Principles of the Law, Policing

(as of March 18, 2019)

RONALD J. ALLEN, Chicago, IL  
JAMES M. ANDERSON, Pittsburgh, PA  
JOSÉ F. ANDERSON, Baltimore, MD  
DONALD B. AYER, Mc Lean, VA  
MIRIAM H. BAER, Brooklyn, NY  
NANNETTE A. BAKER, Saint Louis, MO  
SUSAN A. BANDES, Chicago, IL  
WILLIAM W. BARRETT, Greenwood, IN  
DEBRA LYN BASSETT, Los Angeles, CA  
RONALD G. BLUM, New York, NY  
ANDREW S. BOUTROS, Chicago, IL  
STEVEN M. BRADFORD, Muscatine, IA  
DENNIS J. BRAITHWAITE, Camden, NJ  
DAVID M. BRODSKY, New York, NY  
JEAN-JACQUES CABOU, Phoenix, AZ  
ELENA A. CAPPELLA, Philadelphia, PA  
CATHERINE L. CARPENTER, Los Angeles, CA  
W. TUCKER CARRINGTON, Oxford, MS  
NICOLE B. CASAREZ, Houston, TX  
JENNIFER CHACÓN, Los Angeles, CA  
HENRY L. CHAMBERS JR., Richmond, VA  
STEVEN L. CHANENSON, Villanova, PA  
GABRIEL J. CHIN, Davis, CA  
COLM F. CONNOLLY, Wilmington, DE  
BEVERLY WINSLOW CUTLER, Palmer, AK  
MICHAEL R. DREEBEN, Washington, DC  
JOSHUA DRESSLER, Columbus, OH  
KRISTI K. DUBOSE, Mobile, AL  
RONALD EISENBERG, Philadelphia, PA  
ILANA H. EISENSTEIN, Philadelphia, PA  
J. WILLIAM ELWIN JR., Chicago, IL  
ANNE S. EMANUEL, Atlanta, GA  
ANTHONY C. EPSTEIN, Washington, DC  
KATIE R. EYER, Camden, NJ  
ROGER A. FAIRFAX JR., Washington, DC  
MARY FAN, Seattle, WA  
DANIEL M. FILLER, Philadelphia, PA  
GERALD M. FINKEL, Charleston, SC  
MATTHEW L.M. FLETCHER, East Lansing, MI  
MARY ANNE FRANKS, Miami, FL  
ERIC M. FREEDMAN, Hempstead, NY  
PAUL L. FRIEDMAN, Washington, DC  
DOROTHY J. GLANCY, Santa Clara, CA  
CHRISTOPHER S. GONTARZ, Newport, RI  
HERVÉ GOURAIGE, Newark, NJ  
DAVID C. GRAY, Baltimore, MD  
LINDA SHERYL GREENE, Madison, WI  
MICHAEL GREENWALD, Philadelphia, PA  
CHARLES E. GRIFFIN, Ridgeland, MS  
LISA KERN GRIFFIN, Durham, NC  
JOHN J. GROGAN, Philadelphia, PA  
AYA GRUBER, Boulder, CO  
JOHN O. HALEY, Tucson, AZ  
RONALD J. HEDGES, Hackensack, NJ  
RONALD K. HENRY, Washington, DC  
EDWIN E. HUDDLESON, Washington, DC  
HERMAN N. JOHNSON JR., Huntsville, AL  
RICHARD GIBBS JOHNSON, Cleveland, OH  
JOSHUA KARSH, Chicago, IL  
ORIN S. KERR, Los Angeles, CA  
CECELIA M. KLINGELE, Madison, WI  
JOSEPH P. KLOCK JR., Coral Gables, FL  
MICHAEL J. KRAMER, Albion, IN  
CHERYL A. KRAUSE, Philadelphia, PA  
ERIN C. LAGESEN, Salem, OR  
PETER F. LANGROCK, Middlebury, VT  
WILLIAM J. LEAHY, Albany, NY  
PETER E. LECKMAN, Philadelphia, PA  
BILL LANN LEE, Berkeley, CA  
CYNTHIA K. LEE, Washington, DC  
ANDREW D. LEIPOLD, Champaign, IL  
BENJAMIN LERNER, Philadelphia, PA  
WAYNE A. LOGAN, Tallahassee, FL  
MARGARET COLGATE LOVE, Washington, DC  
ERIK LUNA, Phoenix, AZ  
C. SCOTT MARAVILLA, Washington, DC  
PAUL MARCUS, Williamsburg, VA  
DAVID CHARLES MASON, Saint Louis, MO  
MARY MASSARON, Bloomfield Hills, MI  
ALFRED D. MATHEWSON, Albuquerque, NM  
JAMES R. MAXEINER, Baltimore, MD  
JASON MAZZONE, Champaign, IL  
DAVID MCCORD, Des Moines, IA  
JAMES C. MCKAY JR., Washington, DC  
THEODORE A. MCKEE, Philadelphia, PA  
JOSEPH MCLAUGHLIN, New York, NY  
BENJAMIN C. MCMURRAY, Salt Lake City, UT  
MARJORIE A. MEYERS, Houston, TX  
NATASHA MINSKER, Sacramento, CA  
S. DAVID MITCHELL, Columbia, MO

JENNIFER L. MNOOKIN, Los Angeles, CA  
PAUL MOGIN, Washington, DC  
PAUL W. MOLLICA, Chicago, IL  
KIMBERLY J. MUELLER, Sacramento, CA  
RICHARD L. NEUMEIER, Boston, MA  
MICHAEL M. O'HEAR, Milwaukee, WI  
JAN P. PATTERSON, Waco, TX  
DAVID E. PATTON, New York, NY  
BRIAN J. PAUL, Indianapolis, IN  
MARY MARGARET PENROSE, Fort Worth, TX  
LUCIAN T. PERA, Memphis, TN  
KRISTINA PICKERING, Las Vegas, NV  
W. MICHEL PIERSON, Baltimore, MD  
ELLEN S. PODGOR, Gulfport, FL  
EDWARD M. POSNER, Philadelphia, PA  
GERALD S. REAMEY, San Antonio, TX  
NOELLE M. REED, Houston, TX  
JUDITH RESNIK, New Haven, CT  
L. SONG RICHARDSON, Irvine, CA  
ALICE RISTROPH, Brooklyn, NY  
IRA P. ROBBINS, Bethesda, MD  
JAMES L. ROBERTSON, Jackson, MS  
JACK M. SABATINO, Trenton, NJ  
JANET L. SANDERS, Boston, MA  
LYNN HECHT SCHAFFRAN, New York, NY  
RICHARD HENRY SEAMON, Moscow, ID  
MATTHEW R. SEGAL, Boston, MA  
MORRIS SILBERMAN, Tampa, FL  
KAMI CHAVIS SIMMONS, Winston Salem, NC  
KENNETH W. SIMONS, Irvine, CA  
WENONA T. SINGEL, Lansing, MI  
DAVID ALAN SKLANSKY, Stanford, CA  
VIRGINIA E. SLOAN, Washington, DC  
JONATHAN M. SMITH, Washington, DC  
DAVID A. SONENSHEIN, Philadelphia, PA  
ARTHUR B. SPITZER, Washington, DC  
JEFFREY W. STEMPEL, Las Vegas, NV  
H. MARK STICHEL, Baltimore, MD  
ELIZABETH S. STONG, Brooklyn, NY  
DEAN A. STRANG, Madison, WI  
GUY MILLER STRUVE, New York, NY  
JEANNIE SUK GERSEN, Cambridge, MA  
JOHN S. SUMMERS, Philadelphia, PA  
MARY ELLEN TABOR, Des Moines, IA  
JEROME T. TAO, Las Vegas, NV  
MICHAEL VITIELLO, Sacramento, CA  
BILL WAGNER, Tampa, FL  
SARAH N. WELLING, Lexington, KY

The bylaws of The American Law Institute provide that “Publication of any work as representing the Institute’s position requires approval by both the membership and the Council.”

Each portion of an Institute project is submitted initially for review to the project’s Advisers and Members Consultative Group as a Preliminary Draft. As revised, it is then submitted to the Council as a Council Draft. After review by the Council, it is submitted as a Tentative Draft or Discussion Draft for consideration by the membership at an Annual Meeting.

Once it is approved by both the Council and membership, a Tentative Draft represents the most current statement of the Institute’s position on the subject and may be cited in opinions or briefs in accordance with Bluebook rule 12.9.4, e.g., Restatement (Second) of Torts § 847A (Am. Law Inst., Tentative Draft No. 17, 1974), until the official text is published. The vote of approval allows for possible further revision of the drafts to reflect the discussion at the Annual Meeting and to make editorial improvements.

The drafting cycle continues in this manner until each segment of the project has been approved by both the Council and the membership. When extensive changes are required, the Reporter may be asked to prepare a Proposed Final Draft of the entire work, or appropriate portions thereof, for review by the Council and membership. Review of this draft is not *de novo*, and ordinarily is limited to consideration of whether changes previously decided upon have been accurately and adequately carried out.

The typical ALI Section is divided into three parts: black letter, Comment, and Reporter’s Notes. In some instances there may also be a separate Statutory Note. Although each of these components is subject to review by the project’s Advisers and Members Consultative Group and by the Council and the membership, only the black letter and Comment are regarded as the work of the Institute. The Reporter’s and Statutory Notes remain the work of the Reporter.

**Principles (excerpt of the Revised Style Manual approved by the ALI Council  
in January 2015)**

**Principles are primarily addressed to legislatures, administrative agencies, or private actors. They can, however, be addressed to courts when an area is so new that there is little established law. Principles may suggest best practices for these institutions.**

*a. The nature of the Institute's Principles projects.* The Institute's Corporate Governance Project was conceived as a hybrid, combining traditional Restatement in areas governed primarily by the common law, such as duty of care and duty of fair dealing, with statutory recommendations in areas primarily governed by statute. The project was initially called "Principles of Corporate Governance and Structure: Restatement and Recommendations," but in the course of development the title was changed to "Principles of Corporate Governance: Analysis and Recommendations" and "Restatement" was dropped. Despite this change of title, the Corporate Governance Project combined Restatement with Recommendations and sought to unify a legal field without regard to whether the formulations conformed precisely to present law or whether they could readily be implemented by a court. In such a project, it is essential that the commentary make clear the extent to which the black-letter principles correspond to actual law and, if not, how they might most effectively be implemented as such. These matters were therefore carefully addressed at the beginning of each Comment, as they should be in any comparable "Principles" project.

The "Principles" approach was also followed in Principles of the Law of Family Dissolution: Analysis and Recommendations, the Institute's first project in the field of family law. Rules and practice in this field vary widely from state to state and frequently confer broad discretion on the courts. The project therefore sought to promote greater predictability and fairness by setting out broad principles of sufficient generality to command widespread assent, while leaving many details to the local establishment of "rules of statewide application," as explained in the following provision:

**§ 1.01 Rules of Statewide Application**

**(1) A rule of statewide application is a rule that implements a Principle set forth herein and that governs in all cases presented for decision in the jurisdiction that has adopted it, with such exceptions as the rule itself may provide.**

**(2) A rule of statewide application may be established by legislative, judicial, or administrative action, in accord with the constitutional provisions and legal traditions that apply to the subject of the rule in the adopting jurisdiction.**

Principles of the Law of Family  
Dissolution: Analysis and  
Recommendations

Thus, a black-letter principle provided that, in marriages of a certain duration, property originally held separately by the respective spouses should upon dissolution of the marriage be recharacterized as marital, but it left to each State the formula for determining the required duration and extent of the recharacterization:

#### **§ 4.12 Recharacterization of Separate Property as Marital Property at the Dissolution of Long-Term Marriage**

**(1) In marriages that exceed a minimum duration specified in a rule of statewide application, a portion of the separate property that each spouse held at the time of their marriage should be recharacterized at dissolution as marital property.**

**(a) The percentage of separate property that is recharacterized as marital property under Paragraph (1) should be determined by the duration of the marriage, according to a formula specified in a rule of statewide application.**

**(b) The formula should specify a marital duration at which the full value of the separate property held by the spouses at the time of their marriage is recharacterized at dissolution as marital property.**

Principles of the Law of Family  
Dissolution: Analysis and  
Recommendations

The Comments and Illustrations examined and analyzed the consequences of selecting various possible alternatives.

“Principles” may afford fuller opportunity to promote uniformity across state lines than the Restatement or statutory approaches taken alone. For example, the Institute’s Complex Litigation: Statutory Recommendations and Analysis combines broad black-letter principles with the text of a proposed federal statute that would implement those principles.



## PROJECT STATUS AT A GLANCE

### **Chapter 7. Use of Force** (formerly Chapter 5)

§§ 7.01 to 7.06 (T.D. No. 1 and T.D. No. 1 Revised) (formerly §§ 5.01-5.06) – approved at 2017 Annual Meeting

### **History of Material in This Draft**

This project was initiated in 2015.

Earlier versions of Chapter 1 can be found in Preliminary Draft Nos. 1 and 2 (2016), Council Draft No. 2 (2018), and the Appendix to Council Draft No. 3 (2018); two additional Sections of that Chapter, §§ 1.08 and 1.09, were drafted for Preliminary Draft No. 4 but have not yet been presented to Council for approval. Earlier versions of Chapter 4 (previously Chapter 3) can be found in Council Draft Nos. 2 and 3 (2018) and Preliminary Draft Nos. 1 and 3 (2016, 2018). Earlier versions of Chapter 10 can be found in Council Draft No. 3 (2018) and Preliminary Draft No. 1 (2016) (as Chapter 9). Earlier versions of Chapter 11 can be found in Council Draft Nos. 2 and 3 (2018) and Preliminary Draft Nos. 2 and 3 (2016, 2017).





## Foreword

Principles of the Law, Policing, is coming to the Annual Meeting for the second time. The project was launched in 2015 under the leadership of Reporter Barry Friedman of New York University School of Law. Barry directs a very talented group of Associate Reporters: Brandon L. Garrett of Duke University School of Law, Rachel A. Harmon of the University of Virginia School of Law, Tracey L. Meares of Yale Law School, and Christopher Slobogin of Vanderbilt University Law School. Also, the project has benefited enormously from the excellent substantive work of its Fellow, Maria Ponomarenko of New York University School of Law.

At the Annual Meeting in 2017, the membership approved the portion of the project dealing with use of force. Even casual readers of major newspapers know how salient and controversial the issue of excessive police force has been in recent years, particularly in metropolitan areas. In New York City, where I live, the issue captured the front pages in July 2014 with the tragic death of Eric Garner after a police officer put him in a chokehold while arresting him for the sale of single cigarettes from packs without tax stamps. Now, the Reporters are submitting four Chapters for approval: Chapter 1 on general principles, Chapter 4 on police encounters, Chapter 10 on eyewitness identifications, and Chapter 11 on police questioning.

As I wrote in one of my quarterly letters to the ALI membership, because we undertook a “Principles” project, rather than a Restatement, our goal is not to synthesize judicial precedent. Instead, the Reporters are working to develop best practices for issues concerning policing that have significant legal underpinnings. Our work is informed by a variety of sources, including existing policies and practices in various jurisdictions, social-science research, and constitutional norms. Finally, the audience for the project is quite broad, including legislatures, policing agencies, bodies that regulate or conduct oversight on policing, the public, and also, in some instances, the courts.

This project is distinctive in terms of the breadth of experiences of its Advisers. The group includes police chiefs and leaders of organizations that have expressed concern about policing practices, as well as judges, prosecutors, and defense attorneys.

As all close observers of the ALI’s work know, it takes a village to produce an ALI project. I am therefore very grateful to the team of Reporters and to the very dedicated Advisers and

Members Consultative Group. At a time when our society appears unusually divided, observing individuals from very different walks of life approach very difficult issues civilly and constructively is a real privilege!

RICHARD L. REVESZ

*Director*

*The American Law Institute*

March 17, 2019

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<i>Section</i>	<i>Page</i>
Project Status at a Glance .....	xv
Foreword .....	xvii
Reporters' Memorandum .....	xxi
Projected Overall Table of Contents .....	xxv

## CHAPTER 1 GENERAL PRINCIPLES

§ 1.01. Scope and Applicability of Principles .....	1
§ 1.02. Goals of Policing .....	4
§ 1.03. Reducing Harm .....	5
§ 1.04. Transparency and Accountability .....	12
§ 1.05. Written Rules, Policies, and Procedures .....	15
§ 1.06. Promoting Police Legitimacy .....	22
§ 1.07. Community Policing .....	25

## CHAPTER 4 POLICE ENCOUNTERS

§ 4.01. Officer-Initiated Encounters with Individuals .....	35
§ 4.02. Justification for Encounters .....	39
§ 4.03. Ensuring the Legitimacy of Police Encounters .....	46
§ 4.04. Permissible Intrusions During Stops .....	54
§ 4.05. Minimizing Intrusiveness of Stops and Arrests .....	55
§ 4.06. Consent Searches .....	60
§ 4.07. Searches Incident to a Lawful Custodial Arrest .....	65

**CHAPTER 10**  
**EYEWITNESS IDENTIFICATIONS**

§ 10.01. General Principles for Eyewitness Identification Procedures.....	73
§ 10.02. Eyewitness Identification Procedures.....	77
§ 10.03. Threshold for Conducting Eyewitness Identifications.....	83
§ 10.04. Showup Procedures.....	86
§ 10.05. Blind or Blinded Procedures.....	90
§ 10.06. Obtaining and Documenting Eyewitness Confidence Statements.....	92
§ 10.07. Reinforcement or Feedback.....	95
§ 10.08. Recording Eyewitness Identification Procedures.....	96

**CHAPTER 11**  
**POLICE QUESTIONING**

§ 11.01. Objectives of Police Questioning.....	99
§ 11.02. Recording of Police Questioning.....	107
§ 11.03. Informing Persons of Their Rights Prior to Questioning.....	112
§ 11.04. Conducting Police Questioning.....	114
§ 11.05. Questioning of Members of Vulnerable Populations.....	119

<b>Appendix A. Black Letter of Tentative Draft No. 2.....</b>	<b>125</b>
---	------------

<b>Appendix B. Other Relevant Black-Letter Text.....</b>	<b>135</b>
--	------------



**New York University**  
*A private university in the public service*

School of Law

**Barry Friedman**  
*Jacob D. Fuchsberg Professor of Law*

## ***MEMORANDUM***

TO: ALI Membership  
DATE: March 6, 2019  
RE: Second Set of Policing Principles

Your Reporters on *Principles of the Law, Policing*, are pleased to come to you with our second set of Principles, for consideration at the May 2019 Annual Meeting.

You will recall that our first set of Principles dealt with Use of Force. Those Principles were adopted at the May 2017 Annual Meeting, and we since have sent them to many people in response to inquiries.

In this installment, we are bringing considerably more of our project before the membership.

Before turning to the specific Chapters you are about to read, I'd like to remind everyone of something it is extremely easy even for the Reporters to forget at times: what we are *not* doing is synthesizing the rules of constitutional law. As is common knowledge to this body, constitutional law provides a floor for government conduct, but in no way limits what self-regulation government imposes. Although nothing we propose here dips below the constitutional floor, on some occasions we are exceeding that floor, at least as the Constitution has been defined by the courts. When we do so, our Commentary and Reporters' Notes make that clear.

More commonly, we simply are taking a different approach from that of the constitutional doctrine. Police departments (and other entities that engage in policing practices) are complex bureaucracies that cannot possibly be governed in their entirety by a limited set of constitutional doctrines. Instead, what is needed are legal principles that address much of what constitutional law leaves untouched. To that end, much of what we are adopting is a regulatory approach. The

enormous value of this ALI project—which we hear from all quarters regularly—is the deep need for legal guidance on these many issues not resolved by constitutional law.

Relatedly, I want to remind the body that our Advisers for this project run the gamut from civil-liberties advocates and defense lawyers to many police officials and prosecutors. We are lucky to have a wealth of expertise, and our discussions—cordial, intellectually rigorous, and sometimes humorous to boot—are invaluable to making sure the Principles we bring to you are well suited to implementation. We are lucky to hear and take on board a wealth of perspectives before we come to you, and those perspectives have been highly supportive of our approach.

We come to you now with four Chapters of our work.

First, you have Chapter 1, on General Principles, which identifies the guiding principles and themes that inform much of what follows. Consistent with a regulatory approach, you will see our emphasis on agencies having policies on the books formulated in advance of action, when possible with public input.

Chapter 4, on police encounters, deals with seizures of persons—from street stops to arrests—as well as some searches that occur as a part of those stops, such as searches incident to a lawful arrest. Of all our Chapters, this is the one that follows constitutional doctrine the most, though it also goes beyond that doctrine in order to deal more directly with a set of street-level enforcement practices—particularly the frequent use of traffic and pedestrian stops—that have drawn considerable criticism (and a great deal of litigation) in recent years. (Just FYI, we have been working hard on principles for what is commonly thought of as “searches and seizures” of property and data, and those will come to you in the future.)

Chapter 10 is intended to address the variety of eyewitness identification procedures such as showups, lineups, photo arrays, and the like. These Principles are based on sound science, and heavily influenced by the recent National Academy of Sciences report on this subject.

Finally, Chapter 11 contains principles governing Police Questioning, what often is referred to in criminal constitutional law as “interrogation.” We use the phrase police questioning instead, in part because these Principles govern not just the acquisition of information from suspects, but from witnesses and the public as well.

That is what you have before you now. In case you are curious about our direction, you might again consult the Projected Overall Table of Contents. We currently are working hard on the remainder of the project—in addition to searches, seizures, and databases, we are focusing in particular on the two Chapters at the end on remedies and accountability, which we view as a crucial part of our project.

We look forward to meeting with you in May.





## **PROJECTED OVERALL TABLE OF CONTENTS**

- Chapter 1. General Principles
- Chapter 2. General Principles of Searches, Seizures, and Information Gathering
- Chapter 3. Policing with Individualized Suspicion
- Chapter 4. Police Encounters
- Chapter 5. Policing in the Absence of Individualized Suspicion
- Chapter 6. Policing Databases
- Chapter 7. Use of Force
- Chapter 8. General Principles of Evidence Gathering
- Chapter 9. Forensic Evidence Gathering
- Chapter 10. Eyewitness Identifications
- Chapter 11. Police Questioning
- Chapter 12. Informants
- Chapter 13. Internal Agency Accountability
- Chapter 14. External Accountability, Political Oversight, and Judicial Remedies



# CHAPTER 1

## GENERAL PRINCIPLES

1    **§ 1.01. Scope and Applicability of Principles**

2           **(a) These Principles are intended to guide the conduct of all government entities**  
3 **whenever they search or seize persons or property, use or threaten to use force, conduct**  
4 **surveillance, gather and analyze evidence, or question potential witnesses or suspects.**  
5 **Entities that perform these functions are referred to as “agencies” throughout these**  
6 **Principles.**

7           **(b) A subset of these Principles is intended primarily to guide the conduct of**  
8 **traditional law-enforcement agencies, such as police departments, sheriffs’ offices, and**  
9 **federal and state investigative agencies. Entities that perform these functions are referred to**  
10 **as “law-enforcement agencies” throughout these Principles.**

11           **(c) These Principles are intended for consideration by an informed citizenry, and**  
12 **adoption as deemed appropriate by legislative bodies, courts, and agencies. They are not**  
13 **intended to create or impose any legal obligations absent such formal adoption, and they are**  
14 **not intended to be a restatement of governing law, including state or federal constitutional**  
15 **law.**

16    **Comment:**

17           *a. Functional definition of “agencies.”* These Principles are intended to apply to the  
18 exercise of particular state functions, no matter which agency performs them. For this reason,  
19 subsection (a) adopts a functional approach. It makes clear that the Principles apply to all  
20 agencies—at the federal, state, regional, and local levels—if and when they exercise state power  
21 to engage in the various practices addressed herein. This includes government agencies not  
22 traditionally understood as law-enforcement agencies, such as welfare agencies authorized to  
23 conduct home inspections. It also includes private entities—such as university police departments  
24 or private security agencies—whose agents are authorized by law to perform the functions  
25 enumerated in this Section. Any time agencies search or seize persons or property, use or threaten  
26 to use force, investigate criminal activity, conduct surveillance, gather evidence, or question  
27 potential witnesses or suspects, they should do so in accordance with these Principles.

1           The emphasis in subsection (a) on these specific practices is not meant to downplay the  
2 many other important functions that law-enforcement officers perform—from acting as first  
3 responders to working collaboratively with community members on areas of concern. These tasks  
4 are essential—and often are more effective at promoting the goals of policing, see § 1.02, than are  
5 more coercive methods. But the functions enumerated here—and which are the focus of many of  
6 these Principles—are ones that, if not regulated carefully, risk undermining the very goals and  
7 values that policing agencies are sworn to uphold.

8           *b. Limitations on applicability.* Although these Principles generally adopt a functional  
9 approach, there nevertheless are important differences between traditional law-enforcement  
10 agencies—such as police departments and sheriffs’ offices—and other entities that may from time  
11 to time exercise some of the functions enumerated in subsection (a). Traditional law-enforcement  
12 agencies often are the primary agencies of government to which community members look to  
13 promote public safety, maintain order, and address other issues of community concern. These  
14 differences require additional guidance beyond the general principles applicable to all agencies.  
15 For this reason, a subset of these Principles—such as the Principle on community policing, see  
16 § 1.07—addresses approaches and practices that are of particular importance to traditional law-  
17 enforcement agencies, and may not apply to other agencies—such as welfare agencies or health-  
18 inspection agencies—that also are authorized to conduct searches or seizures.

19           *c. Nature of Principles and attendant liability of covered agencies and actors.* Three things  
20 follow from the fact that these are “Principles.” First, they are stated at a high level of generality,  
21 and may need to be made more specific through legislation or agency policy. Second, standing  
22 alone they are not intended to create liability in agencies or their employees. They contain none of  
23 the appropriate limits on liability, such as fault or causation standards. Rather, they are intended  
24 to inform the principled development of policies and rules by governmental actors, including  
25 legislative bodies, administrative bodies (including public-safety agencies themselves), and courts.  
26 Adoption of such rules, including liability rules, is a necessary predicate to imposing liability.  
27 Chapters 13 and 14 advance Principles for compliance, auditing, accountability, and liability.  
28 Third, although at present much of the law governing policing is constitutional law, these  
29 Principles are not intended merely to replicate those constitutional rules. Constitutional law is a  
30 necessary floor that governs policing in certain areas, but many if not most policing leaders believe  
31 they can and ought to do better. These Principles at times either go beyond constitutional

1 requirements, or—more commonly—apply in situations in which constitutional limitations have  
2 not been developed, and may not in fact be appropriate.

### REPORTERS' NOTES

3 These Principles adopt a functional definition of “policing” that includes all of the practices  
4 enumerated in this Section and discussed throughout these Chapters. Whenever any agency or  
5 official engages in one of these practices, the Principles apply.

6 In particular, the applicability of these Principles typically does not hinge on whether  
7 government agents possess the power of arrest—which is what has traditionally distinguished  
8 peace officers, “sworn” officers, or “law enforcement” officers from other executive agents. See,  
9 e.g., ALA. CODE § 36-21-60 (defining a “peace officer” as a person “possessing the powers of  
10 arrest . . . who is required by the terms of employment . . . to give full time to the preservation of  
11 public order and the protection of life or property or the detection of crime in the state”); 720 ILL.  
12 COMP. STAT. 5/2-13 (“Peace officer means . . . any person who by virtue of his office or public  
13 employment is vested by law with a duty to maintain public order or to make arrests for offenses.”).

14 The power to effect an arrest—and to use force if necessary in doing so—certainly raises  
15 a number of concerns that are unique to traditional law-enforcement agencies, and these concerns  
16 are addressed in various places throughout these Principles. But the scope of these Principles is  
17 broader, and includes, inter alia, guidance on the use and maintenance of government databases  
18 for law-enforcement purposes, programmatic searches and seizures, the use of various surveillance  
19 technologies, and evidence gathering. Traditional law-enforcement agencies perform all of these  
20 functions—but some also are performed by other agencies, including labor departments, housing  
21 bureaus, national-security agencies, and the like. Some state agencies employ sworn officers to  
22 perform some or all of these regulatory functions, e.g., CAL. PENAL CODE § 830.3 (2014) (including  
23 among its definition of a “peace officer”: “[i]nspectors of the food and drug section,” “investigators  
24 within the Division of Labor Standards Enforcement,” and select “[e]mployees of the Department  
25 of Housing and Community Development”); *Skinner v. Ry. Labor Execs.’ Ass’n*, 489 U.S. 602  
26 (1989) (rules requiring suspicionless drug testing adopted by Federal Railway Administration);  
27 *Lebron v. Florida Dept. of Children & Families*, 772 F.3d 1352 (11th Cir. 2014) (drug-testing  
28 scheme carried out by state social-services agency). In other agencies, however, these functions  
29 are performed by civilian employees. The goal in adopting a functional definition of “policing” is  
30 to underscore that whenever agencies engage in the various practices enumerated in subsection  
31 (a), these Principles apply.

32 On the other hand, policing agencies—typically traditional law-enforcement agencies—do  
33 play a unique role. They engage in functions no other agency performs, such as community  
34 policing or the use of deadly force. Some of the Principles here are therefore applicable primarily  
35 to them.

36 It is important to emphasize that these are principles, and are not intended as a restatement  
37 of governing law. They would need to be adopted by either legislatures or policing agencies

1 themselves to make them binding. And they are at times stated more broadly than may be  
2 appropriate as a liability rule. Subsection (c) makes clear that before liability can attach, a  
3 recognized lawmaking body needs to formally adopt a liability rule, as well as an underlying  
4 conduct rule.

5 Finally, it is important to bear in mind that these Principles are not intended to mirror  
6 constitutional law, though constitutional law of course governs when it applies. At times, these  
7 Principles exceed the requirements of constitutional law, and make clear when that is the case.  
8 More frequently, these Principles apply in instances in which there simply is not constitutional law  
9 at all. Sometimes that may reflect a failure of constitutional law itself, but far more commonly it  
10 reflects the fact that it simply is not the role of constitutional law to regulate all of what policing  
11 agencies do. It is, however, the role of law to regulate the conduct of all agencies, policing or  
12 otherwise. These Principles provide guidance on what the content of that regulation ought to be.

### 13 § 1.02. Goals of Policing

14 **The goals of policing are to promote a safe and secure society, to preserve the peace,**  
15 **to address crime, and to uphold the law.**

#### 16 **Comment:**

17 *a. Goals of policing.* The fundamental end of policing is to promote the safety and security  
18 of all members of society. Safety and security are related goals, but they nonetheless are distinct.  
19 To be effective, agencies should strive not only to minimize actual crime and disorder, but also to  
20 address residents' fear of crime and to help ensure that residents feel secure in their persons,  
21 activities, relationships, and property with respect both to other members of society and to the  
22 police themselves.

23 Agencies advance these goals in a variety of ways, including: by detecting and arresting  
24 violators of the law; by rendering aid when necessary; by adopting deterrent strategies; and by  
25 working cooperatively with the public to develop crime-prevention strategies. In choosing among  
26 the many tools at their disposal, policing agencies should—consistent with these Principles—adopt  
27 strategies that best advance the goals of policing while minimizing the potential harms that  
28 policing can impose. See § 1.03. The duty to uphold the law includes not only the responsibility  
29 to *enforce* the law, but also to *adhere* to the law. Importantly, this includes a duty to uphold and  
30 adhere to constitutional law, and to respect the rights of all people.

## REPORTERS' NOTES

1           The goals of policing enumerated in this Section are consistent with how many policing  
2 agencies define their missions and responsibilities. For example, the Law Enforcement Code of  
3 Ethics—first adopted by the International Association of Chiefs of Police in 1957 and included as  
4 part of the oath that many officers take—begins by recognizing that the “fundamental duty” of  
5 law-enforcement officers “is to serve mankind; to safeguard lives and property; to protect the  
6 innocent against deception, the weak against oppression or intimidation, the peaceful against  
7 violence and disorder; and to respect the Constitutional rights of all people to liberty, equality and  
8 justice.” See also Austin Police Department Policy Manual at 6 (“The Austin Police Department’s  
9 basic goal is to protect life, property, and to preserve the peace in a manner consistent with the  
10 freedom secured by the United States Constitution.”); American Bar Association, Standards on  
11 Urban Police Function 1.2-4 (1980) (“The highest duties of government, and therefore the police,  
12 are to safeguard freedom, to preserve life and property, to protect the constitutional rights of  
13 citizens and maintain respect for the rule of law by proper enforcement thereof, and, thereby, to  
14 preserve democratic processes.”). In his influential book, *Policing a Free Society*, Herman  
15 Goldstein similarly details how the purposes of policing are to promote individual rights and to  
16 safeguard the processes of democracy. HERMAN GOLDSTEIN, *POLICING A FREE SOCIETY* (1977).

17           A number of law-enforcement organizations likewise have recognized the importance of  
18 ensuring not only the physical safety of residents but their sense of security as well. As a former  
19 director of the Department of Justice COPS Office emphasized, “people not only need to be safe,  
20 but they also need to feel safe. Treating both of these issues as two parts of a greater whole is a  
21 critical aspect of community policing.” Bernard K. Melekian, *Letter from the Director*, in GARY  
22 CORDNER, *REDUCING FEAR OF CRIME: STRATEGIES FOR POLICE* (2010); Police Bureau, The City of  
23 Portland, Oregon, “Our Mission Statement,” <https://www.portlandoregon.gov/police/> (“The  
24 mission of the Portland Police Bureau is to reduce crime and the fear of crime. We work with all  
25 community members to preserve life, maintain human rights, protect property and promote  
26 individual responsibility and community commitment.”). Throughout its Final Report, the  
27 Presidential Task Force on 21st Century Policing emphasized the corrosive effects that fear—both  
28 of crime and of the police—can have on communities, and encouraged policing agencies to view  
29 community trust as essential to their mission of promoting public safety. PRESIDENT’S TASK FORCE  
30 ON 21ST CENTURY POLICING: FINAL REPORT (2015).

### 31 § 1.03. Reducing Harm

32           **Agencies that exercise policing powers should, to the extent feasible, pursue the goals**  
33 **of policing in a way that reduces attendant or incidental harms. Toward that end, agencies**  
34 **should adopt rules, policies, and procedures that respect and uphold constitutional rights;**  
35 **guard against arbitrary or discriminatory policing; promote the preservation of life, liberty,**

1 **and property; reduce the risk of injury to both officers and members of the public; ensure**  
2 **the accuracy of investigations; and promote the wellbeing of officers and community**  
3 **members alike.**

4 **Comment:**

5 *a. Reducing harm.* This Section reflects the principle that agencies exercising policing  
6 powers should strive to the extent feasible to reduce the harms they impose both on the targets of  
7 police activity and on the broader community. In the policing context, the potential harms are  
8 varied, including loss of life or liberty, risk of injury to officers or members of the public, damage  
9 to property, invasion of privacy, emotional distress, and dignitary and racial harms. Reducing those  
10 harms is essential to advancing the goals of safety and security outlined in § 1.02.

11 Many of the Principles included in the Chapters that follow are intended to promote this  
12 principle. For instance, agencies' use-of-force policies should be guided by a "sanctity of life"  
13 philosophy that recognizes the preservation of all life as a core principle of policing. See §§ 7.01-  
14 7.05. In the arrest context, agencies should encourage officers to utilize alternatives to arrest—  
15 such as warnings and citations—when doing so is consistent with promoting public safety and  
16 preserving order. See § 4.05 (discussing use of citations in lieu of arrest).

17 Agencies have an obligation to respect and uphold the constitutional rights of suspects and  
18 other members of the public. Demonstrating a commitment to upholding constitutional rights and  
19 values can promote agency legitimacy and trust, improve the quality of police–citizen interactions,  
20 and make it easier for officers to carry out their duties. Both in their values statements and through  
21 training, agencies should emphasize that state and federal constitutions are not an obstacle to  
22 effective policing, but rather are among the laws that officers are sworn to uphold and protect. In  
23 formulating agency rules, policies, and procedures, agencies should consider not only the letter of  
24 the constitutional law as interpreted by the courts, but also the underlying constitutional norms of  
25 equality, non-arbitrariness, privacy, security, and free expression. Thus, in addition to fulfilling  
26 their constitutional obligation to avoid engaging in arbitrary and discriminatory policing, agencies  
27 also should strive to the extent possible to reduce the overall discriminatory *impact* that policing  
28 can have on communities of color and other marginalized groups. Agencies also should strive to  
29 minimize unnecessary invasions of privacy, including privacy harms that may not be cognizable  
30 as a matter of constitutional law.



1 Consistent with Chapter 8, policing agencies should strive to ensure the accuracy and  
2 reliability of their investigations, and should work diligently not only to identify wrongdoers but  
3 also to rule out innocent suspects. Agencies should adopt clear guidance on evidence gathering,  
4 documentation, and compliance with discovery obligations in criminal proceedings.

5 Finally, agencies should develop internal policies and practices to promote officer safety  
6 and wellbeing—which are essential not only for the benefit of officers but also for community  
7 members who depend on their officers to provide effective, caring, and respectful service.

### REPORTERS' NOTES

8 Agencies that engage in policing play a vital role in protecting public safety and preserving  
9 order. As the President's Commission on Law Enforcement and the Administration of Justice  
10 recognized in 1965, "[t]he freedom of Americans to walk their streets and be secure in their  
11 homes—in fact, to do what they want when they want—depends to a great extent on their  
12 policemen." PRESIDENT'S COMM'N ON LAW ENFORCEMENT AND THE ADMIN. OF JUSTICE, THE  
13 CHALLENGE OF CRIME IN A FREE SOCIETY 92 (1967). Police are, and ought to think of themselves  
14 as, the "guardians of democracy"—the proper functioning of policing agencies is essential to the  
15 enjoyment of liberty. Sue Rahr & Stephen K. Rice, *From Warriors to Guardians: Recommitting*  
16 *American Police Culture to Democratic Ideals*, NEW PERSPECTIVES IN POLICING BULLETIN 2  
17 (2015).

18 In recognition of their important function, policing officials are entrusted with wide-  
19 ranging powers—to utilize force, engage in surveillance, seize persons and property, and question  
20 suspects—but in a democratic society, these powers must be regulated carefully. Policing officials  
21 have a duty to respect and uphold constitutional law—and to the extent that use of these powers  
22 encroaches on the constitutional rights of the public, they must be limited accordingly. More  
23 generally, policing officials should ensure that the use of these powers is limited to the minimum  
24 amount necessary to achieve the goals of policing. See Vicki C. Jackson, *Constitutional Law in an*  
25 *Age of Proportionality*, 124 YALE L.J. 3094, 3106-3110 (2015); see also § 1.01. Accordingly,  
26 agencies and their constituent communities should work together to define those powers and  
27 monitor their use so as to ensure that they are exercised in a way that protects officers and the  
28 public and reduces or eliminates unnecessary harms.

29 The values expressed in this Section reflect the idea that policing should "impose[] harms  
30 only when, all things considered, the benefits for law, order, fear reduction, and officer safety  
31 outweigh the costs of those harms." See Rachel A. Harmon, *The Problem of Policing*, 110 MICH.  
32 L. REV. 761, 792 (2012). The principle of harm-minimization already informs a variety of specific  
33 policing policies and practices. The National Institute of Justice, for instance, calls on police to  
34 "use only the amount of force necessary to mitigate an incident, make an arrest, or protect  
35 themselves or others from harm." Nat'l Inst. of Justice, *Police Use of Force*, <http://nij>.

1 gov/topics/law-enforcement/officer-safety/use-of-force/pages/welcome.aspx (last visited Dec. 1,  
2 2015). See also LOS ANGELES POLICE DEP'T MANUAL, Vol. 1 § 115; U.S. Gov't Accountability  
3 Office, Report No. GAO-05-464, *Taser Weapons: Use of Tasers by Selected Enforcement*  
4 *Agencies* 7-8 (2005). This principle is part of standard police officer training. UNITED STATES  
5 DEP'T OF JUSTICE, OFFICE OF JUSTICE PROGRAMS, USE OF FORCE BY POLICE: OVERVIEW OF  
6 NATIONAL AND LOCAL DATA vii (1999).

7 Agencies that engage in policing should consider harm minimization on a macro scale as  
8 well. Those agencies should weigh carefully both the short- and long-term costs and benefits of  
9 policing tactics, procedures, and technologies—including both tangible measures like crime rates  
10 and budgetary expenditures, as well as intangibles like community trust. See Rachel Harmon,  
11 *Federal Programs and the Real Costs of Policing*, 90 N.Y.U. L. REV. 870 (2015); VERA INSTITUTE  
12 OF JUSTICE, ADVANCING THE QUALITY OF COST-BENEFIT ANALYSIS FOR JUSTICE PROGRAMS.

13 *1. Respecting and upholding constitutional rights.* Agencies that engage in policing have a  
14 duty to protect the constitutional rights of all persons, including criminal suspects. As a number of  
15 leading law-enforcement officials have recognized, protecting constitutional rights is not “an  
16 impediment to the public safety mission. [It] is the mission of police in a democracy.” Sue Rahr &  
17 Stephen K. Rice, *From Warriors to Guardians: Recommitting American Police Culture to*  
18 *Democratic Ideals*, NEW PERSPECTIVES IN POLICING BULLETIN 2 (2015); see also Charles H.  
19 Ramsey, *The Challenge of Policing in a Democratic Society: A Personal Journey Toward*  
20 *Understanding*, NEW PERSPECTIVES IN POLICING BULLETIN (2014). Indeed, ensuring the  
21 constitutional rights of the people is essential to promoting a safe and secure society—for residents  
22 to feel secure in their persons and property they must have the assurance that their constitutional  
23 rights will be respected by the police.

24 Policing agencies should stress the importance of upholding constitutional values both in  
25 their policy manuals and through officer training. A number of agencies already do so. For  
26 example, the Los Angeles Police Department's management principles state that “[a] peace  
27 officer's enforcement should not be done in grudging adherence to the legal rights of the accused  
28 . . . . We peace officers should do our utmost to foster a reverence for the law. We can start best  
29 by displaying a reverence for the legal rights of our fellow citizens and a reverence for the law  
30 itself.” Los Angeles Police Department, “Management Principles of the LAPD.” See also Phoenix  
31 Police Department Manual § 1.01 (“The department is committed to an aggressive response to  
32 criminal enforcement of the law and the protection of constitutional rights throughout the City of  
33 Phoenix.”). The Philadelphia Police Department has introduced a new training program for police  
34 recruits, “Policing in a More Perfect Union,” which takes officers on a tour through the National  
35 Constitution Center and focuses on the role of police in a democratic society. See also Rahr &  
36 Rice, *supra* (discussing a similar training program in Washington State).

37 *2. Avoiding arbitrary or discriminatory policing.* Police agencies must, consistent with  
38 constitutional law, avoid engaging in arbitrary or discriminatory policing. Policing agencies also  
39 should strive to minimize the overall discriminatory impact that policing can have on communities  
40 of color or other marginalized groups. Various studies have shown that certain policing

1 strategies—such as the proactive use of traffic and pedestrian stops—can produce substantial racial  
2 disparities. See § 4.03, Reporters’ Notes. Agencies should, consistent with this Section and the  
3 Principles in Chapter 4, consider limiting the use of these tactics in order to minimize these effects.  
4 Policing that is *perceived* to be arbitrary and discriminatory risks undermining police effectiveness  
5 by eroding community trust. See PRESIDENT’S TASK FORCE, *supra*, at 9-18; Tracey Meares, *The*  
6 *Legitimacy of Policing Among Young African-American Men*, 92 MARQ. L. REV. 651, 655-660  
7 (2009). As the International Association of Chiefs of Police (IACP) recognized in a 2015 report  
8 on police–community relations, even well-intentioned policies can have the unintended  
9 consequences of “reduction in perceptions of police fairness, legitimacy, and effectiveness.” IACP  
10 National Policy Summit on Community-Police Relations: Advancing a Culture of Cohesion and  
11 Community Trust 7 (2015). This erosion in trust has long-term implications for policing,  
12 particularly given reliance on cooperation and participation in the criminal-justice system.

13       3. *Preserving life, liberty, and property; avoiding physical injuries.* One of the core goals  
14 of policing is to preserve human life. The sanctity of all life—including the lives of officers,  
15 suspects, and community members whose safety may be threatened by criminal activity—is central  
16 to policing. See PRESIDENT’S TASK FORCE ON 21ST CENTURY POLICING: FINAL REPORT 19 (2015)  
17 (“[A] clearly stated ‘sanctity of life’ philosophy must also be in the forefront of every officer’s  
18 mind.”). Policing agencies should incorporate the “sanctity of life” principle into their use-of-force  
19 policies both for the safety of officers and the safety of the public. See POLICE EXECUTIVE  
20 RESEARCH FORUM, GUIDING PRINCIPLES ON USE OF FORCE 34 (2016) (“Agency mission  
21 statements, policies, and training curricula should emphasize the sanctity of all human life—the  
22 general public, police officers, and criminal suspects—and the importance of treating all persons  
23 with dignity and respect.”); see also Albuquerque Police Department, *Our Mission*,  
24 <http://apdonline.com/our-mission.aspx> (last visited Jan. 4, 2016) (“We respect the sanctity of life,  
25 the dignity of all people, and use only that force necessary to accomplish our lawful duty.”);  
26 Philadelphia Police Department, Directive 10.1 “Use of Force—Involving Discharge of Firearms”  
27 (emphasizing that officers should “hold the highest regard for the sanctity of human life, dignity,  
28 and liberty of all persons”). Policing agencies also should take steps to minimize the risk of  
29 physical injury to officers, suspects, and bystanders; to avoid unnecessary damage to property; and  
30 to minimize the infliction of emotional or psychological distress.

31       Agencies also should minimize undue restrictions on liberty, including arrests as well as  
32 lesser intrusions, such as investigative stops. As discussed in greater detail in Chapter 4, although  
33 stops and arrests further a number of important law-enforcement purposes, they also can have  
34 significant consequences both for the individuals and officers involved and for police–community  
35 relations more broadly. See §§ 4.03-4.05 (Sections on investigative stops and arrests). For  
36 individuals, the costs of an arrest potentially may include fines and fees, loss of public housing,  
37 loss of a job, deportation, and child-custody consequences, in addition to intangible consequences  
38 such as embarrassment and resentment. See Rachel Harmon, *Why Arrest?*, 115 MICH. L. REV. 307,  
39 313-319 (2017). Arrests also carry a risk of injury for officers, suspects, and the community. See  
40 CYNTHIA LUM & GEORGE FACHNER, INTERNATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF CHIEFS OF POLICE, POLICE

1 PURSUITS IN AN AGE OF INNOVATION AND REFORM: THE IACP POLICE PURSUIT DATABASE 7  
2 (2008) (reporting that 14.9 percent of police officer deaths were caused by “arrest situations”).  
3 Individuals who are stopped by the police—particularly if they are not in fact involved in any  
4 wrongdoing—may perceive that they are being unfairly targeted, which can undermine agency  
5 legitimacy. See, e.g., Tom R. Tyler, Jeffrey Fagan & Amanda Geller, *Street Stops and Police*  
6 *Legitimacy: Teachable Moments in Young Urban Men’s Legal Socialization* (Columbia Law  
7 School Public Law & Legal Theory Working Paper Group Paper No. 14-380, April 2014).

8 In view of these concerns, agencies should—to the extent authorized by law—develop  
9 policies to encourage officers to limit the use of stops and arrests to circumstances in which (a)  
10 they are constitutional; (b) they are necessary to advance legitimate purposes; and (c) the social  
11 benefits of initiating a given stop or arrest clearly justify the costs. PRESIDENT’S TASK FORCE,  
12 *supra*, at 43. Agencies should also ensure that stops and arrests are not incentivized by officer-  
13 performance measures. See PRESIDENT’S TASK FORCE, *supra*, at 26-27.

14 4. *Protecting privacy interests.* Agencies that engage in policing should strive to minimize  
15 invasions of privacy. Privacy is fundamental in a democratic society. As the President’s  
16 Commission on Law Enforcement and Observance recognized in 1965, “privacy of  
17 communication is essential if citizens are to think and act creatively and constructively.”  
18 CHALLENGE OF CRIME 202. It “is crucial to democracy in providing the opportunity for parties to  
19 work out their political positions, and to compromise with opposing factions, before subjecting  
20 their positions to public scrutiny.” Ruth Gavison, *Privacy and the Limits of Law*, 89 YALE L.J.  
21 421, 456 (1980).

22 The need for agencies to take care to protect privacy interests is particularly acute in light  
23 of new technologies that have expanded the potential scope and pervasiveness of government  
24 surveillance. This includes both law enforcement use of technology—such as GPS tracking, bulk  
25 data collection, license-plate tracking, and closed-circuit television (CCTV) cameras—as well as  
26 the public’s use of technologies like cell phones, computers, and social media that are vulnerable  
27 to surveillance. As the U.S. Supreme Court recognized in *Riley v. California*, 134 S. Ct. 2473,  
28 2491 (2014), “a cell phone search [today] would typically expose to the government far *more* than  
29 the most exhaustive search of a house: A phone not only contains in digital form many sensitive  
30 records previously found in the home; it also contains a broad array of private information never  
31 found in a home in any form—unless the phone is.” Policing agencies therefore should, consistent  
32 with the Principles that follow, develop rules, policies, and procedures to address the use and  
33 surveillance of new technologies—and should involve the public in the process to ensure that these  
34 decisions are consistent with community values. See PRESIDENT’S TASK FORCE, *supra*, at 35. See  
35 Chapters 2, 3, and 5.

36 5. *Ensuring the accuracy of police investigations.* Policing agencies have an obligation to  
37 seek the truth and to work diligently both to identify potential wrongdoers and to clear the innocent.  
38 Consistent with these obligations, a number of major law-enforcement organizations have  
39 incorporated a commitment to accuracy and reliability both as part of their organizational value  
40 statement and as a basis for specific department rules, policies, and procedures. For example, the

1 IACP Canons of Police Ethics state that “The law enforcement officer shall be concerned equally  
2 in the prosecution of the wrong-doer and the defense of the innocent.” Likewise, the Austin Police  
3 Department’s policies on eyewitness identification emphasize the importance of complying with  
4 the outlined procedures to “maximiz[e] the reliability of identifications, exonerate innocent  
5 persons, and establish[] evidence that is reliable and conforms to established legal procedure.”  
6 Austin Police Department Manual at 243. See also Chapter 10.

7         6. *Promoting officer wellbeing.* Ensuring the wellbeing of officers is critical to achieving  
8 the other goals of policing. Their wellbeing affects not only officers themselves, but also public  
9 safety: an officer burdened by physical or mental illness can be a danger to himself or herself, his  
10 or her fellow officers, and the larger community. See PRESIDENT’S TASK FORCE, *supra*, at 61.  
11 Policing is by its nature a high-stress profession. Stephen M. Soltys, *Officer Wellness: A Focus on*  
12 *Mental Health*, 40 S. ILL. U. L.J. 439 (2016). Undiagnosed mental illnesses can hamper an officer’s  
13 ability to maintain calm in high-stress situations or to engage with the public in a positive way.  
14 See Mora L. Fiedler, *Officer Safety and Wellness: An Overview of the Issues* 4, COMMUNITY  
15 ORIENTED POLICING SERVICES, U.S. DEP’T OF JUSTICE (2012).

16         Protecting officer wellbeing requires taking an expansive view of the risks faced by  
17 officers. Police face direct threats in the form of physical violence: 135 officers were killed in the  
18 line of duty in 2016. NAT’L LAW ENF’T OFFICERS MEMORIAL FUND, PRELIMINARY 2016 LAW  
19 ENFORCEMENT OFFICER FATALITIES REPORT 1, [http://www.nleomf.org/assets/pdfs/reports/](http://www.nleomf.org/assets/pdfs/reports/Preliminary-2016-EOY-Officer-Fatalities-Report.pdf)  
20 [Preliminary-2016-EOY-Officer-Fatalities-Report.pdf](http://www.nleomf.org/assets/pdfs/reports/Preliminary-2016-EOY-Officer-Fatalities-Report.pdf). But they also face myriad indirect threats,  
21 including heightened rates of suicide, sleep disorders, alcoholism, and post-traumatic stress  
22 disorder. See Fiedler, *supra*, at 9; see also JOHN M. VIOLANTI, *DYING FOR THE JOB: POLICE WORK*  
23 *EXPOSURE AND HEALTH* (2014). Police departments must consider officer safety holistically in  
24 order to protect their officers and the public.

25         Policing agencies should take steps to further this broad understanding of officer wellbeing,  
26 by providing for adequate training, safety standards, and up-to-date equipment, and by prioritizing  
27 officer safety and wellbeing at all levels of the department. See Letter from Jane Castor, Chief of  
28 Police, City of Tampa, to the President’s Task Force on 21st Century Policing, Feb. 23, 2015.  
29 Toward this end, police departments should work to transform department culture so as to ensure  
30 that officers “feel respected by their supervisors” and to “overturn the tradition of silence on  
31 psychological problems.” PRESIDENT’S TASK FORCE, *supra*, at 61. Consistent with the notion of  
32 procedural justice, departments also should implement “internal procedural justice” reforms to  
33 ensure that officers are treated fairly in internal department proceedings. See Ron Safer & James  
34 O’Keefe, *Preventing and Disciplining Police Misconduct: An Independent Review and*  
35 *Recommendations Concerning Chicago’s Police Disciplinary System* (2014).

1 **§ 1.04. Transparency and Accountability**

2 **Agencies should, consistent with the need for confidentiality, be transparent and**  
3 **accountable, both internally within the agency and externally with the public.**

4 **Comment:**

5 *a. Transparency.* Agencies should be transparent both internally and externally. Internal  
6 transparency—which refers to the culture and practices within an organization—is important for  
7 building officer morale and promoting effective management. Agencies can improve internal  
8 transparency by establishing clear and comprehensive rules, policies, and procedures and by  
9 ensuring that agency decisionmaking processes are open and straightforward. External  
10 transparency is essential to building trust and legitimacy between policing agencies and the general  
11 public. To promote external transparency, agencies should, consistent with § 1.05, make  
12 department rules, policies, and procedures available to the public, and should maintain and make  
13 public data on various aspects of department practice and procedure. Many jurisdictions already  
14 collect and make public data on police–citizen encounters, including arrests, summonses, stops,  
15 searches, and uses of force. Governments at the federal, state, or local levels can support these  
16 efforts by investing in tools to simplify data collection and reporting.

17 *b. Accountability.* Accountability likewise has both internal and external components.  
18 Internal accountability requires that officers be accountable to their departments through the chain  
19 of command—but also that police executives and agency heads hold themselves accountable to  
20 line officers and to the agency as a whole. Agencies in turn must be accountable to the public both  
21 directly and through various channels, including oversight bodies or inspectors general, executive  
22 officials, legislatures, and courts. Importantly, there must be both front-end and back-end  
23 accountability for agency actions. Back-end accountability addresses misconduct once it has  
24 already happened, through mechanisms such as officer discipline, civilian review boards,  
25 inspectors general, and judicial review. See Chapters 13 and 14. Front-end accountability requires  
26 that initial policymaking decisions be made in an open and transparent manner, with the input of  
27 the community. See § 1.05. These two forms of accountability work in tandem: for there to be  
28 effective back-end accountability, there must be clear rules enacted in advance, against which  
29 officer and agency conduct may be judged.

**REPORTERS' NOTES**

1           Transparency—the disclosure of, and public access to, government information—is a  
2 foundational value of democracy. Transparency ensures that citizen participation is effective and  
3 informed. See Executive Office of the President, *Transparency and Open Government*, 74 FED.  
4 REG. 4685 (2009). And it promotes trust in government by assuring the public that its agents are  
5 in fact acting in pursuit of the public good.

6           Transparency also is essential to effective policing. See generally PRESIDENT’S TASK  
7 FORCE ON 21ST CENTURY POLICING: FINAL REPORT 9-18 (2015); BARRY FRIEDMAN,  
8 UNWARRANTED: POLICING WITHOUT PERMISSION 29-50 (2015); Eric Luna, *Transparent Policing*,  
9 85 IOWA L. REV. 1107 (2000); David Alan Sklansky, *Police and Democracy*, 103 MICH. L. REV.  
10 1699, 1828-1829 (2005). Agencies that are transparent about their goals and methods gain the trust  
11 of the communities they work in, which improves public safety through effective information  
12 sharing and greater willingness on the part of the public to cooperate with the police. See  
13 Testimony of Charlie Beck, Chief of Police, Los Angeles Police Department, before the  
14 President’s Task Force on 21st Century Policing, January 31, 2015; Robert Wasserman, *Guidance*  
15 *for Building Communities of Trust* 27, COMMUNITY ORIENTED POLICING SERVICES, U.S. DEP’T OF  
16 JUSTICE (2012).

17           Agencies should be transparent both internally within the agency and externally with the  
18 public. Internal transparency refers to the culture *within* a police organization. It ensures that  
19 “frontline” officers believe that department leadership follows the stated rules, policies, and  
20 procedures of the department. Officers who trust their supervisors are more likely to report  
21 incidents or dissatisfactions to their supervisors, promoting effective management and reform. See  
22 JOSEPH A. SCHAFER ET AL., THE FUTURE OF POLICING: A PRACTICAL GUIDE FOR POLICE  
23 MANAGERS AND LEADERS 128 (2011). To improve internal transparency, agencies should have a  
24 distinct internal-affairs office; require training in ethics, integrity, and discretion; and implement  
25 consistent officer evaluations. See International Association of Chiefs of Police, *Guidance for*  
26 *Building Communities of Trust*, COMMUNITY ORIENTED POLICING SERVICES, U.S. DEP’T OF  
27 JUSTICE 8-13 (2009).

28           External transparency is a prerequisite to public confidence and trust in the police: an ill-  
29 informed community is unlikely to participate in and engage with law enforcement. See Letter  
30 from Chief Jim Bueermann, President, Police Foundation, to President’s Task Force on 21st  
31 Century Policing, January 6, 2015. External transparency requires that—to the extent possible  
32 given needs of confidentiality, see § 1.05—agencies make their rules, policies, and procedures  
33 available for public review. Agencies also should collect public data on policing operations,  
34 including data on searches, stops, frisks, summonses, citations, and uses of force. See PRESIDENT’S  
35 TASK FORCE, *supra*, at 14-15 (recommending robust data collection). A number of states already  
36 require policing agencies to collect such data. See, e.g., CAL. GOV’T CODE § 12525.2 (use of force);  
37 COLO. REV. STAT. ANN. § 24-33.5-517 (officer-involved shootings); N.C. GEN. STAT. § 143B-904  
38 (use of force resulting in death); 625 ILL. COMP. STAT. ANN. 5/11-212 (pedestrian and traffic

1 stops); CAL. GOV'T CODE § 12525.5 (traffic stops, frisks, searches, summons, and arrests); CONN.  
2 GEN. STAT. ANN. § 54-1m (traffic stops); N.C. GEN. STAT. § 143B-903 (same). A growing number  
3 of agencies collect such data voluntarily. See, e.g., POLICE FOUNDATION, PUBLIC SAFETY OPEN  
4 DATA PORTAL, <https://publicsafetydataportal.org/stops-citations-and-arrests-data/> (last visited:  
5 Oct. 26, 2016) (collecting publicly available data on stops, citations, and arrests). New  
6 technologies, such as body-worn cameras, also can help facilitate more robust data collection and  
7 promote external transparency—though countervailing privacy concerns may limit at least to some  
8 extent the information that can be made public.

9 Accountability is an important, and related, value. Because one of the functions of policing  
10 in safeguarding democracy is enforcing the law, see § 1.02, agencies themselves must be  
11 accountable to the law and not consider themselves above or outside it. Accountability in this  
12 context requires multiple channels of responsibility—again, both internal and external. Individual  
13 officers must be held accountable by the chain of command. Agency executives, in turn, must hold  
14 themselves accountable to frontline officers and, when applicable, their union representatives. See  
15 Christopher Stone & Jeremy Travis, *Toward a New Professionalism in Policing* 14, Harvard  
16 Kennedy School's Executive Session on Policing and Public Safety (2011).

17 Agencies also must be accountable to external structures, including community advisory  
18 boards, inspectors general, city councils, and courts. See Christopher Stone & Heather H. Ward,  
19 *Democratic Policing: A Framework for Action* 5, VERA INST. (1999) (describing layers of  
20 accountability in the Los Angeles Police Department); Testimony of Charlie Beck, Chief of Police,  
21 Los Angeles Police Department, before the President's Task Force on 21st Century Policing,  
22 January 31, 2015 (same). But above and beyond all this, policing agencies must be accountable to  
23 democratic forces, including legislative bodies and the body politic. See Barry Friedman & Maria  
24 Ponomarenko, *Democratic Policing*, 90 N.Y.U. L. REV. 1827 (2015).

25 Although the concept of “accountability” typically is associated with “back-end” or “after-  
26 the-fact” accountability—through mechanisms such as officer discipline or judicial proceedings—  
27 it is essential that there be accountability at the “front end” as well. Front-end accountability refers  
28 to the process by which critical policy decisions are made. It requires that agencies have rules and  
29 policies in place before officials act, and that the policies be available to the public and to the  
30 extent possible formulated with public input. Maria Ponomarenko & Barry Friedman, *Democratic*  
31 *Accountability in Policing*, in REFORMING CRIMINAL JUSTICE vol. 1 (Eric Luna, ed. 2017). The two  
32 forms of accountability work together: front-end accountability sets the rules of the road, and back-  
33 end accountability ensures that those rules are followed. Even when there is misconduct—or  
34 simply an undesired outcome—principles of front-end accountability can play a critical role by  
35 encouraging agencies to reexamine existing policies and identify changes that could be made to  
36 avoid similar incidents in the future. See, e.g., JAMES M. DOYLE, IDEAS IN AMERICAN POLICING:  
37 LEARNING ABOUT LEARNING FROM ERROR (2012) (describing the principle of “forward-looking”  
38 accountability which plays a key role in fields such as medicine and aviation).



1    **§ 1.05. Written Rules, Policies, and Procedures**

2           **(a) Agencies should operate subject to clear and accessible written rules, policies, and**  
3 **procedures. At a minimum, agencies should have rules, policies, or procedures on all aspects**  
4 **of policing that meaningfully affect the rights of members of the public or implicate the**  
5 **public interest.**

6           **(b) Agency rules, policies, and procedures should—to the extent feasible and**  
7 **consistent with concern for public safety—be made available to the public, be formulated**  
8 **through a process that allows for officer and public input, and be subject to periodic review.**  
9 **The presumption is that these materials will be available to the public.**

10 **Comment:**

11           *a. The benefits of written policies.* Agencies should pursue their objectives according to  
12 preexisting written rules, policies, and procedures, particularly when their activities meaningfully  
13 affect the rights of members of the public or implicate the public interest. Written policies help to  
14 constrain discretion and ensure that officers act in accordance with agency values. Before-the-fact  
15 policymaking can improve the quality of agency decisionmaking by ensuring that key policy  
16 choices are made through a deliberative process with the input of responsible decisionmakers and  
17 the public. In order for policymaking to achieve these objectives, however, the policies themselves  
18 must be clear, comprehensive, and internally consistent. Policies that are scattered across multiple  
19 documents, or are vague or confusing, are just as likely to undermine accountability as they are to  
20 promote it. Agencies also should ensure that policies actually are disseminated to officers and  
21 employees, and that there are mechanisms in place to ensure that they are followed. Agency  
22 accountability and compliance mechanisms—through training, supervision, and external review—  
23 are discussed separately in Chapter 13.

24           *b. Public access.* Policy transparency promotes accountability, builds trust between  
25 agencies and their communities, and helps to ensure that agency policies are consistent with the  
26 needs, priorities, and concerns of the community. In view of these important interests, subsection  
27 (b) adopts a strong presumption in favor of making agency policies available for public review,  
28 preferably on the agency’s website to ensure ease of access. At a minimum, agencies should make  
29 publicly available their policies on arrests, investigative stops, consent searches, suspicionless  
30 searches and seizures, handling of mass demonstrations, and the use of force.

1           At the same time, subsection (b) recognizes that there are certain aspects of police  
2 investigations that cannot be open for public inspection. This Section thus provides for an  
3 exception for policies that, if revealed, could either substantially undermine ongoing investigations  
4 or put officers or members of the public at risk. This exception should generally be limited to  
5 policies that reveal operational details or investigative tactics, and should not apply to policies that  
6 set out in general terms the circumstances under which a particular practice or technology may be  
7 deployed. For sensitive law-enforcement matters—for example the use of confidential informants  
8 or the deployment of SWAT teams—agencies should make an effort to release those portions of  
9 the policy that can safely be made public, with sensitive portions redacted.

10           *c. Stakeholder input.* Agencies should make an effort to seek input on agency policies and  
11 practices from affected stakeholders, including officers and members of the public.

12           Involving officers in the policymaking process is an important component of internal  
13 procedural justice. Officers and other agency officials are more likely to view agency policies as  
14 legitimate and to comply with them if they are given an opportunity to participate in their drafting.  
15 Officer input can also improve the quality of agency policies by providing valuable information  
16 about how a policy is likely to work in the field.

17           Agencies also should, to the extent possible, solicit feedback on their policies and practices  
18 from members of the public, particularly from residents of communities that will be subjected to  
19 the practices. Although policing agencies have traditionally not involved community members in  
20 the policymaking process, it is increasingly recognized that doing so can help build trust and  
21 legitimacy, and ensure that policies and practices are consistent with community values and  
22 priorities. This is particularly true for many of the practices discussed throughout this volume that  
23 have been, and are likely to continue to be, of significant public interest or concern.

24           Involving community members in the policymaking process poses a number of challenges,  
25 from finding ways to educate the public about the often complicated mix of legal and policy  
26 considerations that influence a particular policy, to ensuring that agencies get input from all of the  
27 various stakeholders, to finding the resources to devote to the task. In view of these difficulties,  
28 agencies may need to experiment with a range of approaches to seeking community input so as to  
29 identify the processes that best meet the needs of their communities. National law-enforcement  
30 organizations, academic institutions, and the Department of Justice Office of Community Oriented

1 Policing Services (COPS) can assist in these efforts by disseminating information about  
2 approaches that have worked in other jurisdictions.

3 *d. Periodic review.* Policing agencies should establish a process for conducting periodic  
4 review of all policies. Periodic review helps to ensure that agency policies comply with statutory  
5 and constitutional law, that they continue to reflect best practices within the profession, and that  
6 they effectively address the needs of the agency and the community it serves.

7 Agencies can take a variety of approaches to conducting periodic review. For example, a  
8 number of larger agencies have dedicated risk-management units tasked with ensuring that policies  
9 are up to date. Some also have auditors or inspectors general whose duties include reviewing  
10 existing policies and making recommendations. Smaller departments may wish to appoint a policy-  
11 review committee to oversee the policymaking process on a part-time basis in addition to fulfilling  
12 their other responsibilities.

13 As part of the review process, agencies should engage with their communities to identify  
14 potential areas of concern. They also should review citizen complaints and look for patterns that  
15 may indicate that specific policies are in need of revision.

### REPORTERS' NOTES

16 *I. Need for written rules, policies, and procedures.* To the extent possible, agencies should  
17 operate subject to written policies. See BARRY FRIEDMAN, UNWARRANTED: POLICING WITHOUT  
18 PERMISSION, intro. & pt. I (2015). Written policies improve performance in several ways. They  
19 help channel discretion to ensure that officer and employee actions are consistent with department  
20 values. See Debra Livingston, *Police Discretion and the Quality of Life in Public Places: Courts,*  
21 *Communities, and the New Policing*, 97 COLUM. L. REV. 551, 658-659 (1997). They also help to  
22 facilitate both internal and external accountability by creating standards against which to judge  
23 officer and employee behavior. See Laura Kunard & Charlene Moe, *Procedural Justice for Law*  
24 *Enforcement: An Overview* 4, COMMUNITY ORIENTED POLICING SERVICES, U.S. DEP'T OF JUSTICE  
25 (2015). The policymaking process itself improves the quality of policing by ensuring that practices  
26 receive careful consideration, and by placing decisionmaking authority in responsible hands. See  
27 KENNETH CULP DAVIS, POLICE DISCRETION 98-120 (1975); see also Anthony G. Amsterdam,  
28 *Perspectives on the Fourth Amendment*, 58 MINN. L. REV. 349, 416-428 (1974); Wayne R.  
29 LaFave, *Controlling Discretion by Administrative Regulations*, 89 MICH. L. REV. 442, 451 (1990);  
30 Carl McGowan, *Rule-Making and the Police*, 70 MICH. L. REV. 659 (1972). Finally, written  
31 policies can help reduce the influence of bias and provide a consistent training tool. See LaFave,  
32 *supra*.

1 Yet, all too often, agencies lack policies on critical aspects of policing. For example, a 2013  
2 Police Executive Research Forum (PERF) survey showed that 64 percent of law-enforcement  
3 agencies lacked policies on the use of photo lineups, despite the fact that 94 percent of responding  
4 agencies reported using the procedure, and the fact that the National Academy of Sciences has  
5 made clear that there is a risk of erroneous convictions when inappropriate procedures are used.  
6 POLICE EXECUTIVE RESEARCH FORUM, A NATIONAL SURVEY OF EYEWITNESS IDENTIFICATION  
7 PROCEDURES IN LAW ENFORCEMENT AGENCIES (2013); NATIONAL RESEARCH COUNCIL REPORT,  
8 IDENTIFYING THE CULPRIT: ASSESSING EYEWITNESS IDENTIFICATION 1 (2014). Another PERF  
9 survey similarly found that nearly one-third of departments using body-worn cameras did not yet  
10 have policies in place to govern their use. POLICE EXECUTIVE RESEARCH FORUM, IMPLEMENTING  
11 A BODY-WORN CAMERA PROGRAM 2 (2014). The same is true in many other areas of policing. See,  
12 e.g., ALEXANDRA NATAPOFF, SNITCHING: CRIMINAL INFORMANTS AND THE EROSION OF AMERICAN  
13 JUSTICE 26 (2009) (citing lack of policies on use of confidential informants).

14 Consistent with this Section, agencies should work to develop policies on all aspects of  
15 policing that substantially affect the rights of the public or implicate the public interest. At a  
16 minimum, that includes policies on the various practices addressed throughout these Principles,  
17 including the use of force; the conduct of searches, seizures, and surveillance; and the gathering  
18 of evidence. See PRESIDENT’S TASK FORCE, *supra*, at 20, 23 (urging departments to develop  
19 policies on use of force and identification procedures). A number of states already require that  
20 agencies develop written policies to govern various aspects of policing. See, e.g., 25 ME. REV.  
21 STAT. § 2803-B (“All law enforcement agencies shall adopt written policies regarding procedures  
22 to deal with . . . use of physical force . . . ; hostage situations . . . ; domestic violence . . . ; police  
23 pursuits . . . ; criminal conduct engaged in by law enforcement . . . ; recording of law enforcement  
24 interviews of suspects.”); 50 ILL. COMP. STAT. 706/10-20 (2016) (requiring rules for body-worn  
25 cameras). Legislatures at both the state and local levels should consider enacting similar statutes  
26 to ensure that policing is governed by written policies while leaving individual agencies free to  
27 develop policies that reflect department values and community needs. Academic institutions,  
28 national law-enforcement organizations like the International Association of Chiefs of Police or  
29 PERF, civil-liberties organizations, and other government and private entities also can encourage  
30 agency policymaking by conducting and disseminating research on model policies and best  
31 practices. Agencies should disseminate policies to officers and agency employees, and provide  
32 training as necessary. Furthermore, policies should be subject to periodic review to ensure that  
33 they adapt to changing legal requirements, best practices, and community preferences.

34 2. *Public access.* As the Presidential Task Force on 21st Century Policing made clear in its  
35 final report, agency policies should, to the extent possible, be “clearly articulated to the community  
36 and implemented transparently so police will have credibility with residents and the people can  
37 have faith that their guardians are always acting in their best interests.” PRESIDENT’S TASK FORCE  
38 ON 21ST CENTURY POLICING: FINAL REPORT 15 (2015). Secrecy around matters of policy or  
39 practice can undermine public trust and lead to fear or speculation among members of the public.

1           One of the potential obstacles to policy transparency is the fact that the need for  
2 confidentiality is more acute in policing than in other areas of government. There is a legitimate  
3 concern among policing agencies that releasing information about certain policies could make it  
4 easier for suspects to avoid detection, or could put officers or members of the public at risk. To the  
5 extent this is the case, ordinary mechanisms of transparency may need to give way.

6           Insofar as possible, however, the need for confidentiality in policing ought not to stand in  
7 the way of policy transparency. For many aspects of policing—such as the use of consent searches  
8 and investigative stops, the handling of mass demonstrations, the adoption of surveillance  
9 technologies, or the use of force—department policies can be made public and publicly debated  
10 without endangering public safety. A number of police departments have made their policy  
11 manuals on these issues available to the public without any apparent detriment to public safety.  
12 See, e.g., Metropolitan Police Department: Directives for Public Release, available at  
13 <http://mpdc.dc.gov/page/directives-public-release>; Seattle Police Department Manual, available at  
14 <http://www.seattle.gov/police-manual>.

15           Even for more sensitive aspects of policing, such as the use of confidential informants or  
16 special weapons and tactics (SWAT), a number of policing agencies have made their policies  
17 available for public review. See, e.g., Boston Police Department, *Rule 333: Confidential Informant*  
18 *Procedures* (2006); Charlotte-Mecklenburg Police Dep’t, *Directive 900-001: Special Weapons*  
19 *and Tactics (SWAT) Team* (2015); Fairfax County Police Dep’t, *SWAT Team SOP: Tactical*  
20 *Response Levels* (2015); Greenville Police Dep’t, *Use of Informants and Sources of Information*  
21 (2014). At the federal level, the U.S. Department of Justice has also made public its formal  
22 guidelines concerning the Federal Bureau of Investigation, the Drug Enforcement Administration,  
23 and other federal agencies’ use of confidential informants. See Department of Justice, *The Attorney*  
24 *General’s Guidelines Regarding the Use of FBI Confidential Human Sources* (2006); Department  
25 of Justice, *The Attorney General’s Guidelines Regarding the Use of Confidential Informants*  
26 (2002).

27           One useful distinction for agencies to consider in deciding what can safely be made public  
28 is between policies that describe specific tactics or operational details, and those that articulate  
29 overarching rules or norms. See Barry Friedman & Maria Ponomarenko, *Democratic Policing*, 90  
30 N.Y.U. L. REV. 1827, 1884-1885 (2015). Operational details regarding specific SWAT  
31 deployments or the department’s tactical approaches to serving high-risk warrants should typically  
32 be kept secret. But general guidelines about the use of SWAT—the guiding philosophy, the  
33 requirements of supervisor approval, the need for after-action review—can often be made public  
34 without putting officers at risk. For example, the Charlotte-Mecklenburg Police Department’s  
35 publicly available SWAT policy describes the procedures by which department officers can  
36 request SWAT assistance, the kinds of situations that may warrant SWAT deployment, and the  
37 process for completing after-action review. Charlotte-Mecklenburg Police Dep’t, *Directive 900-*  
38 *001*, available at [http://charmeck.org/city/charlotte/CMPD/resources/DepartmentDirectives/](http://charmeck.org/city/charlotte/CMPD/resources/DepartmentDirectives/Documents/CMPDDirectives.pdf)  
39 [Documents/CMPDDirectives.pdf](http://charmeck.org/city/charlotte/CMPD/resources/DepartmentDirectives/Documents/CMPDDirectives.pdf). The difference between general guidelines and specific tactics  
40 is sometimes captured in the distinction between “policies” and “standard operating procedures,”

1 though many agencies use these terms differently. See, e.g., INTERNATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF  
2 CHIEFS OF POLICE, BEST PRACTICES GUIDE: DEVELOPING A POLICE DEPARTMENT POLICY-  
3 PROCEDURE MANUAL 2, available at [http://www.theiacp.org/portals/0/documents/pdfs/BP-  
5 PolicyProcedures.pdf](http://www.theiacp.org/portals/0/documents/pdfs/BP-<br/>4 PolicyProcedures.pdf). Two federal statutes—both of which endeavor to balance the goal of  
6 transparency against the need to keep certain investigative details confidential—draw similar  
7 distinctions. The Stored Communications Act, which typically requires that individuals be notified  
8 when law-enforcement agencies obtain records of their communications from third parties via  
9 subpoena, permits delayed notification when disclosure would “endanger[] the life or physical  
10 safety of an individual” or create other adverse consequences for an investigation. 18 U.S.C.  
11 § 2705. Likewise, the Freedom of Information Act permits agencies to withhold records and  
12 documents “compiled for law enforcement purposes” from public disclosure if disclosing them  
13 would allow individuals to evade the law by using information about specific law-enforcement  
14 procedures and techniques. 5 U.S.C. § 552(b)(7)(E).

15 Even with this distinction in mind, there will undoubtedly be difficult questions regarding  
16 disclosure that individual departments and their communities will need to resolve. But on matters  
17 of policy, it is essential that the presumption be in favor of transparency so that the public can be  
18 sure that agency policies are consistent with community values and needs.

19 *3. Public and officer input.* A growing number of agencies and professionals recognize that  
20 public engagement around policy and practice is essential to promoting trust and legitimacy. This  
21 sort of engagement was one of the core recommendations made by the Presidential Task Force on  
22 21st Century Policing, and has since been embraced by a number of other law-enforcement  
23 organizations. PRESIDENT’S TASK FORCE, *supra*, at 19; see also INTERNATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF  
24 CHIEFS OF POLICE, COMMUNITY-POLICE RELATIONS SUMMIT REPORT at 16 (2015) (urging agencies  
25 to pursue “true partnership,” which involves “institutionalized inclusion of citizens in the business  
26 of the police department”); MAJOR CITY CHIEFS ET AL., ENGAGEMENT-BASED POLICING at 47  
27 (2015) (describing steps the Las Vegas Metropolitan Police Department has taken to involve  
28 community members in discussions about department policies and practices).

29 Although it is an important goal for agencies to pursue, public engagement around matters  
30 of policy raises a number of difficult questions, each of which is discussed in turn. One obstacle  
31 to policy engagement is that members of the public may lack the expertise necessary to participate  
32 meaningfully in formulating department policies. Agency policies often reflect a mix of legal and  
33 tactical considerations with which the public may not be familiar. For example, agency policies on  
34 body-worn cameras may be influenced by state wiretap and privacy laws, collective-bargaining  
35 agreements, and various technological constraints. In a number of states, specific provisions in  
36 body-worn-camera policies are fixed either by state law or by attorney general guidelines. See,  
37 e.g., 50 ILL. COMP. STAT. ANN. 706/10-20 (2016) (empowering a state Board to set minimum  
38 requirements for body-worn camera policies); New Jersey Division of Criminal Justice, AG  
39 Directive 2015-1 (2015) (establishing minimum standards for all body-worn-camera policies in  
the state).

1           If agencies are to get meaningful input on these policies, they will need to find ways to  
2 educate the public on these issues. They may also need to simplify their policies, avoid legal jargon  
3 when possible, and explain clearly key terms. National law-enforcement organizations, academic  
4 institutions, and advocacy organizations can support these efforts by preparing toolkits to inform  
5 community members of the key policy issues and the tradeoffs at stake. For example, the Bureau  
6 of Justice Assistance—working in partnership with criminal-justice practitioners, civil-liberties  
7 groups and advocacy organizations, and community members—has developed a body-worn  
8 camera toolkit for agencies and communities to use in formulating their own policies. See  
9 “National Body-Worn Camera Toolkit,” available at <https://www.bja.gov/bwc/>. Organizations  
10 should work to develop similar toolkits on other topics to encourage police–community  
11 engagement on all policy areas of public concern.

12           Agencies also may need to experiment with a range of approaches to obtain public input  
13 so as to ensure that they are hearing from all of the relevant stakeholders in their communities. It  
14 is especially important that agencies find ways to engage residents in more heavily policed  
15 communities, as well as members of historically marginalized groups, including communities of  
16 color, immigrant communities, and LGBT populations.

17           Although each agency ultimately will need to tailor its approach to the needs of its various  
18 communities, there are a number of models that agencies may wish to consider. Many policing  
19 agencies already hold regular community meetings or have established neighborhood councils.  
20 Although these forums have not traditionally been used to solicit input on specific policies,  
21 departments should consider using them for this purpose. A small number of jurisdictions have  
22 established community police commissions with authority to review department policies. These  
23 commissions exercise varying degrees of control over those policies. For instance, in Los Angeles,  
24 the commission sets policy for the police department. See Los Angeles Police Department, “Police  
25 Commission,” [http://www.lapdonline.org/police\\_commission](http://www.lapdonline.org/police_commission). In Seattle, the commission acts in  
26 an advisory capacity. See Seattle Police Department, “Community Police Commission,”  
27 <http://www.seattle.gov/community-police-commission>. Finally, some agencies have begun to  
28 experiment with online surveys, virtual town halls, and various social-media platforms to solicit  
29 community input, particularly from groups that may not regularly attend community meetings.  
30 See, e.g., Colorado Springs Police Department, “Body Worn Camera Information,”  
31 [https://cspd.coloradosprings.gov/public-safety/police/public-information/body-worn-camera-](https://cspd.coloradosprings.gov/public-safety/police/public-information/body-worn-camera-information)  
32 [information](https://cspd.coloradosprings.gov/public-safety/police/public-information/body-worn-camera-information); Camden County Police Department and the Policing Project at New York University  
33 School of Law.

1 **§ 1.06. Promoting Police Legitimacy**

2 **(a) Agencies should ensure that individuals both outside and inside the agencies are**  
3 **treated in a fair and impartial manner, and are given voice in the decisions that affect them.**

4 **(b) Agencies and officers should be truthful in their interactions with the public, with**  
5 **other government officials, and with the courts.**

6 **Comment:**

7 *a. Promoting legitimacy through interactions with the public.* Studies of procedural justice  
8 have shown that individuals are more likely to comply with the law and cooperate with legal  
9 authorities such as police when they perceive the law and authorities to be fair and just. This  
10 research demonstrates that the public generally cares more about whether they are treated in a way  
11 they perceive to be fair than whether the ultimate outcome of a decision or interaction favors them.  
12 Thus, treating individuals in ways that are consistent with procedural justice—that people consider  
13 to be fair and impartial—can build trust and legitimacy, encourage community members to  
14 cooperate with policing officials, and increase public compliance with the law.

15 Policing officials should treat members of the public with courtesy and respect and carry  
16 out their duties in an unbiased manner. When conducting a traffic or a pedestrian stop, officers  
17 generally should explain the reason for the stop, and give individuals an opportunity to explain  
18 their conduct before taking further enforcement action. Even small adjustments to officer behavior  
19 can have a large impact on the way members of the public perceive the police.

20 *b. Promoting internal legitimacy.* Agencies should apply these same principles to the  
21 officers who work inside the agencies. Agencies should ensure that internal procedures around  
22 performance evaluation, promotion, and discipline are transparent and fair. Agency officials also  
23 should take the time to explain the reasons behind various agency policies, and ensure that officers  
24 and their representatives are given an opportunity to participate in decisions that affect them.  
25 Internal procedural justice can increase compliance with agency rules, policies, and procedures,  
26 and encourages officials to practice procedural justice in their interactions with the public.

27 *c. Truthfulness.* Policing agencies should be truthful in all of their interactions with the  
28 public and with other government agencies, and should develop policies and procedures to ensure  
29 that officers do the same. Agencies should take special care to ensure that officers are truthful in  
30 their testimony in court or in the course of disciplinary proceedings, and hold officers accountable  
31 whenever it becomes apparent that they have not been. There unfortunately have been countless



1 examples of officers giving misleading or false testimony in court—so common that officers  
2 themselves coined the term “testilying” to describe the phenomenon. A lack of truthfulness,  
3 particularly in the course of legal proceedings, poses a threat not only to agency legitimacy but  
4 also to the rule of law, and must be actively discouraged.

### REPORTERS’ NOTES

5 *1. Internal and external legitimacy.* Agencies should incorporate principles of procedural  
6 justice both internally within the department and externally with the communities they serve.  
7 Procedural justice is based on the notion that individuals are more likely to comply with the law  
8 when they perceive it to be just. See Tracey L. Meares & Peter Neyroud, *Rightful Policing* 5,  
9 NAT’L INST. OF JUSTICE (2015); see also Stephen J. Schulhofer et al., *American Policing at a*  
10 *Crossroads: Unsustainable Policies and the Procedural Justice Alternative*, 101 J. CRIM. L. &  
11 CRIMINOLOGY 335, 344-345 (2011); LORRAINE MAZEROLLE ET AL., LEGITIMACY IN POLICING: A  
12 SYSTEMATIC REVIEW (2013). Obtaining this legitimacy requires more than simply adhering to the  
13 law. Meares & Neyroud, *Rightful Policing*, supra, at 6. Extensive research demonstrates that when  
14 members of the public evaluate their interactions with police officers—for example in the context  
15 of a traffic stop or other enforcement action—their perceptions depend at least as much on whether  
16 they believe they were treated *fairly* as on the *outcome* of the interaction. See TOM R. TYLER &  
17 YUEN J. HUO, TRUST IN THE LAW: ENCOURAGING COOPERATION WITH THE POLICE AND THE LAW  
18 53 (2002); Schulhofer et al., supra, at 346 & n.51 (citing studies); Meares & Neyroud, *Rightful*  
19 *Policing*, supra, at 5-6; Tracey Meares et al., *Lawful or Fair? How Cops and Laypeople Perceive*  
20 *Good Policing*, 105 J. CRIM. LAW & CRIMINOLOGY 297 (2015).

21 There are four key principles behind procedural justice: fairness, voice, transparency, and  
22 trustworthiness. PRESIDENT’S TASK FORCE ON 21ST CENTURY POLICING: FINAL REPORT 10 (2015).  
23 In applying these principles to their dealings with community members, policing officials should  
24 strive to treat individuals courteously and respectfully, to give individuals an opportunity to  
25 explain their situations before taking action, and to carry out their duties in an unbiased and  
26 consistent fashion. Schulhofer et al., supra, at 346. Procedural justice requires not only that  
27 officials abide by these principles during their encounters with individuals, but that they strive to  
28 act fairly when making the initial decision of whether or not to engage with a particular person.  
29 Meares & Neyroud, *Rightful Policing*, supra, at 5. Officials should recognize the existence of  
30 human biases—both explicit and implicit—and work to mitigate their influence. PRESIDENT’S  
31 TASK FORCE, supra, at 10. An increasing number of policing agencies have incorporated principles  
32 of external procedural justice into officer training and evaluation. For example, the Washington  
33 State Criminal Justice Training Commission has developed a new training curriculum around the  
34 “L.E.E.D. Model” (which stands for “Listen and Explain with Equity and Dignity”), which teaches  
35 officers to integrate the four pillars of procedural justice into all citizen encounters.

1 Internal procedural justice requires that agencies involve employees, officers, and civilians  
2 alike in formulating organizational values and disciplinary procedures, promotional decisions, and  
3 performance management. See Community Oriented Policing Services, U.S. Dep’t of Justice,  
4 *Comprehensive Law Enforcement Review: Procedural Justice and Legitimacy Summary 2* (2014).  
5 It also requires that agency rules, policies, and procedures be clear, transparent, grounded in  
6 organizational values, and developed in partnership with officers. PRESIDENT’S TASK FORCE,  
7 *supra*, at 14. By practicing the principles of procedural justice within the department, supervisors  
8 can increase officer compliance with agency rules, policies, and procedures and encourage officers  
9 to adopt the values of procedural justice in their interactions with the public. Research suggests  
10 that officers who feel like their supervisors treat them fairly are more likely to abide by policy and  
11 voluntarily comply. See Nicole Haas et al., *Explaining Officer Compliance: The Importance of*  
12 *Procedural Justice and Trust Inside a Police Organization*, COMMUNITY ORIENTED POLICING  
13 SERVICES, U.S. DEP’T OF JUSTICE (2015). Research also has demonstrated that employees who  
14 themselves feel respected by their supervisors are more likely to support external procedural-  
15 justice programs. See WESLEY G. SKOGAN & SUSAN M. HARTNETT, COMMUNITY POLICING,  
16 CHICAGO STYLE (1999); Ben Bradford & Paul Quinton, *Self-Legitimacy, Police Culture and*  
17 *Support for Democratic Policing in an English Constabulary*, 54 BRIT. J. OF CRIMINOLOGY 1023  
18 (2014).

19 Many police departments already demonstrate commitment to internal procedural-justice  
20 principles. For example, the Kansas City Police Department has an established process for  
21 conducting internal audits, and shares those audits publicly. See Kansas City Police Dep’t, *Internal*  
22 *Audit Unit*, <http://kcmo.gov/police/audit/>. Further, the Minneapolis Police Department’s “goals  
23 and metrics” program requires formal monthly conversations between supervisors and officers to  
24 review both the officers’ and the supervisors’ performance. See SHANNON BRANLY ET AL.,  
25 IMPLEMENTING A COMPREHENSIVE PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT APPROACH IN COMMUNITY  
26 POLICING ORGANIZATIONS: AN EXECUTIVE GUIDEBOOK 39-40 (2015).

27 2. *Truthfulness*. Agencies also should ensure that they and their officers are truthful in all  
28 of their interactions, both internally within the agency, and externally with the public and the  
29 courts. Doing so is important for preserving not only the agency’s legitimacy, but also the  
30 legitimacy of the criminal-justice system as a whole. Bennett Capers, *Crime, Legitimacy, and*  
31 *Testilying*, 83 IND. L.J. 835, 870-871 (2008).

32 Over the years, studies and reports have pointed to a variety of practices that threaten  
33 agency credibility and undermine public trust. Many, for example, have expressed concern about  
34 the prevalence of “testilying”—giving false or misleading testimony in court in order to avoid the  
35 suppression of evidence or civil liability. Capers, *supra* at 868-869; Myron W. Orfield, Jr.,  
36 *Deterrence, Perjury, and the Heater Factor: An Exclusionary Rule in the Chicago Criminal*  
37 *Courts*, 63 U. COLO. L. REV. 75, 107 (1992) (surveying judges and prosecutors in Chicago criminal  
38 court and estimating that officers gave false testimony about 20 percent of the time). Others have  
39 pointed to the “code of silence” that encourages officers to cover up for colleagues who engage in  
40 misconduct. See, e.g., Aziz Z. Huq & Richard H. McAdams, *Litigating the Blue Wall of Silence*,

1 2016 U. CHICAGO LEGAL FORUM 213 (describing the phenomenon); U.S. Department of Justice,  
2 Investigation of the Chicago Police Department 75 (2017) (citing numerous instances of officers  
3 lying in official reports, and concluding that “a code of silence exists, and . . . is apparently strong  
4 enough to incite officers to lie even when they have little to lose by telling the truth.”). Still others  
5 have noted lack of candor on the part of agencies themselves—particularly around the use of  
6 surveillance technologies. See, e.g., U.S. House Committee on Oversight and Reform, *Law*  
7 *Enforcement Use of Cell-Site Simulation Technologies* (2016) (criticizing the Federal Bureau of  
8 Investigation’s use of nondisclosure agreements to prohibit local law-enforcement agencies from  
9 disclosing to courts or defense attorneys when a cell-site simulator—or “Stingray”—was used to  
10 locate a suspect in the course of a criminal investigation); Kim Zetter, “Emails Show Feds Asking  
11 Florida Cops to Deceive Judges,” WIRED (June 19, 2014) (quoting emails between two Florida  
12 law-enforcement agencies discussing instructions from the U.S. Marshals Service to describe  
13 location information acquired using a Stingray as having been obtained from “a confidential  
14 source”).

15 Agencies can promote truthfulness in various ways. For example, as discussed in greater  
16 detail in Chapter 13, agencies should make clear that officers have a duty of candor and should  
17 hold officers accountable for any false or misleading statements provided in official reports or in  
18 the course of internal investigations. See § 13.XX [forthcoming Section on officer misconduct in  
19 the course of investigations]. Most department policy manuals already make clear that officers and  
20 employees “shall be truthful in all matters relating to their duties.” SAN DIEGO POLICE  
21 DEPARTMENT POLICY MANUAL § 9.29. Agencies also should keep track of instances in which an  
22 officer’s testimony has been deemed non-credible by prosecutors or courts. See also Chapter 14  
23 [forthcoming Principles on external agency accountability].

## 24 § 1.07. Community Policing

25 **Policing agencies should work in partnership with their communities to jointly**  
26 **promote public safety and community wellbeing. Agencies should adopt a comprehensive**  
27 **organizational strategy that promotes and facilitates police–community partnerships**  
28 **through officer training, patrol assignments, metrics and performance evaluation, and**  
29 **department programs and initiatives.**

### 30 **Comment:**

31 *a. Community policing.* This Section adopts the view—shared by many within the law-  
32 enforcement community—that policing agencies and their communities jointly share in the  
33 responsibility for promoting public safety and community wellbeing, and should work in  
34 partnership to identify and address community problems and concerns. Although community

1 policing has come to mean many things to many people, most definitions of community policing  
2 embrace several core, overarching ideals, each of which is discussed in the following Comments.

3       *b. Community policing as an organizational strategy.* The principles of community  
4 policing should inform policing-agency decisionmaking at all levels of the organization—  
5 including decisions about hiring, deployment, and evaluation—and should not simply be seen as  
6 an adjunct of the primary law-enforcement mission. As many law-enforcement professionals have  
7 recognized, some of the core aspects of community policing are incompatible with more traditional  
8 approaches to agency management and organization. For example, so long as officers are evaluated  
9 primarily on the basis of metrics like stops and arrests, they are unlikely to invest time and energy  
10 into working with residents or developing alternative strategies for dealing with public-safety  
11 concerns. Likewise, few of the problems that community members identify can be addressed  
12 effectively by patrol officers alone—most require cooperation from others in the department or  
13 from other units and departments in a municipality.

14       *c. Patrol.* Officers who spend their days responding to calls for service in different parts of  
15 the city will not have time to become familiar with local neighborhood conditions or to follow up  
16 on persistent neighborhood concerns. One alternative is to assign officers to specific  
17 neighborhoods and to structure patrol assignments in ways that give officers an opportunity to get  
18 to know residents and to become familiar with local problems and concerns. Doing so encourages  
19 officers to take responsibility for problems within their communities, and can make community  
20 members more comfortable reporting crimes or bringing public-safety issues to the attention of  
21 police.

22       The form these assignments take ultimately will have to be left to each department and its  
23 community to decide, and will be informed by each jurisdiction’s resources, geography, and needs.  
24 There are any number of approaches that agencies can take. A number of agencies, particularly in  
25 larger jurisdictions, have introduced more compact patrol sectors that match existing neighborhood  
26 boundaries. Others have experimented with a variety of alternatives to motorized patrol, from  
27 substations to bicycle or foot patrols. Agencies also have adjusted their staffing models in various  
28 ways to ensure that officers have time in the day to engage with residents in a non-enforcement  
29 capacity and to follow up on the problems they identify. Many jurisdictions now use non-sworn  
30 civilian officers to take complaints of minor crimes such as burglary, to prepare accident reports,  
31 and to assist in other enforcement activities. Others have developed alternative mechanisms for

1 dealing with nonemergency calls for service—including dedicated nonemergency complaint  
2 systems like 311, as well as other delayed-response protocols.

3 *d. Collaborative decisionmaking.* If policing agencies and community members are to work  
4 together to “co-produce” public safety, it is essential that residents have meaningful input into the  
5 priorities, strategies, and practices that shape how their communities are policed. Members of the  
6 public know best the difficulties and challenges they face. They can provide valuable insight into  
7 which practices are likely to be successful in their communities, and can alert agencies to the  
8 unintended consequences of rules, policies, and procedures they wish to adopt. Policing a  
9 community without involving its residents may lead to mismatched priorities, a loss of trust, and,  
10 ultimately, a loss of legitimacy. For these and many other reasons, agencies should engage  
11 residents in an ongoing dialogue over all aspects of agency practice, including officer training,  
12 hiring, and evaluation; use of new technologies; crime-reduction strategies; and new community-  
13 policing programs and initiatives. See also § 1.05. Agencies should consider using a variety of  
14 mechanisms to engage the community—including forums, questionnaires, small-group meetings,  
15 conversations with various stakeholders, and the agencies’ social-media presence—and should  
16 tailor their approaches to the needs of the various communities they serve. In particular, agencies  
17 should consider establishing more formal organizational structures—such as police commissions  
18 or citizen advisory boards—that ensure that members of the public have a clear and consistent role  
19 in articulating the needs of communities and in identifying strategies to address them.

20 *e. Community partnerships.* To facilitate collaborative decisionmaking and  
21 implementation, agencies should establish and maintain partnerships with a variety of community  
22 organizations and other government agencies—including faith-based organizations, local  
23 businesses, and social-service organizations—as well as with individual members of the  
24 community. In identifying partners, agencies should not rely solely on established stakeholders,  
25 but should look for individuals and organizations who may not have a history of working with the  
26 police but who can offer valuable guidance and assistance. Agencies also should be open to  
27 overtures from community organizations that approach them. City officials should encourage and  
28 support these efforts by assisting policing agencies in identifying and forming partnerships with  
29 both private and public entities, and by ensuring that there are structures in place to facilitate  
30 collaboration among different agencies all working toward a related set of goals.

1           *f. Opportunities for positive interaction between officers and community members.* To  
2 facilitate meaningful partnerships and improve police–community relations, agencies also should  
3 ensure that there are opportunities for positive interaction between officers and community  
4 members. Interacting with one another in a setting outside of official duties gives officers and  
5 community members an opportunity to get to know one another as individuals and as people with  
6 whom they have something in common. Thus, although athletic leagues, block parties, and  
7 community police academies should not be the sum total of an agency’s community policing plan,  
8 they can be an important component of a broader engagement strategy. In choosing among various  
9 initiatives, policing agencies should consult with community members about the programs they  
10 would most wish to see in their neighborhoods. Agencies also should look for opportunities to  
11 partner with community organizations in sponsoring programs and events—which can both help  
12 to ensure broader turnout and create a foundation for more meaningful collaboration on matters of  
13 substance.

14           *g. Equity.* In pursuing the goals of community partnership and responsiveness, it is essential  
15 that police officials not lose sight of another important value: equity. The unfortunate reality—one  
16 that affects not just policing but all government—is that some groups are better organized than are  
17 others to ensure that their voices are heard. In looking to the community to identify problems and  
18 participate in implementing solutions, policing agencies should ensure that they do not simply  
19 advance the interests of some community members at the expense of others, but that they engage  
20 with and address the needs of *all* members of their communities. See also  
21 §§ \_\_. \_\_ [Principles on Vulnerable Populations, to come].

## REPORTERS’ NOTES

22           There is wide acknowledgement, both in and out of law enforcement, that effective policing  
23 requires close collaboration between the community and the police. The need for something like  
24 “community policing” was recognized as early as the 1960s, when national commissions studying  
25 the violence and rioting in American cities recognized that police departments had grown aloof  
26 and estranged from the communities they were charged with keeping safe. The concept was given  
27 full voice in a widely acclaimed Harvard Executive Session on policing in 1989, particularly by  
28 Houston’s Police Chief, Lee P. Brown. In 1994, President Bill Clinton established the Office of  
29 Community Oriented Policing Services (COPS) in the Department of Justice and committed 8.4  
30 billion federal dollars to assist departments in adopting a more community-focused approach. And

1 although “community policing” has come to mean many things and have many elements, there has  
2 been wide agreement on the importance of its core ideals.

3 Nonetheless, in the aftermath of racial tensions around policing in Ferguson, Missouri, in  
4 the summer of 2014, it became clear that in too many jurisdictions community policing had been  
5 given lip service, while the reality on the ground was quite different. Studies showed that “many  
6 police departments [had] not embrac[ed] these approaches with fidelity to the original ideas” and  
7 that “community policing has been unevenly implemented” at best. Anthony A. Braga, *Crime and*  
8 *Policing Revisited*, NEW PERSPECTIVES IN POLICING 17 (2015). See also MALCOLM SPARROW,  
9 *HANDCUFFED* 18 (2006). And it is easy to see why. It can be resource intensive. It requires  
10 collaboration, both between the police and their communities and between the police and other  
11 social-service organizations. It is painstaking.

12 Still, the consensus of many well-respected policing leaders is that the legitimacy of law  
13 enforcement ultimately depends on forging close ties between the community and the police. The  
14 President’s Task Force on 21st Century Policing called for police and communities to “co-  
15 produce” public safety. PRESIDENT’S TASK FORCE ON 21ST CENTURY POLICING: FINAL REPORT 3  
16 (2015). The International Association of Chiefs of Police likewise urged departments to  
17 “reevaluate, reinvigorate, renew, re-instate, rebuild, and restart department efforts to build  
18 meaningful police-community relationships.” IACP NATIONAL POLICY SUMMIT ON COMMUNITY-  
19 POLICE RELATIONS: ADVANCING A CULTURE OF COHESION AND COMMUNITY TRUST 13 (2015). The  
20 task is not an easy one—but it is essential.

21 *1. Background.* Although “community policing” entered the law-enforcement lexicon in  
22 the 1980s, the idea itself goes back to the founding of modern policing—and to its founder, Sir  
23 Robert Peel. In his 1829 *Principles of Law Enforcement*, Peel declared that “Police, at all times,  
24 should maintain a relationship with the public that gives reality to the historic tradition that the  
25 police are the public and the public are the police.” The police, he stressed, are “only members of  
26 the public who are paid to give full-time attention to duties which are incumbent on every citizen  
27 in the interests of community welfare and existence.”

28 In the United States, however, the structure of municipal governments in the late 1880s  
29 and early 1900s led to an unhealthy relationship between police and their communities. Many  
30 cities, particularly in the north, were governed by political machines. The police became tools of  
31 those machines, beset by patronage and—in the words of police reformer August Vollmer—  
32 “ignorance, brutality, and graft.” August Vollmer & Albert Schneider, *The School for Police as*  
33 *Planned at Berkeley*, 7 J. CRIM. L. & CRIMINOLOGY 877 (1917). In 1931, the National Commission  
34 on Law Observance and Enforcement commented on the “loss of public confidence in the police  
35 of our country,” which it attributed to the “control which politicians have” over the nation’s police.  
36 Wickersham Commission, *Wickersham Report on Police*, 2 AM. J. OF POLICE SCIENCE 337 (1931).

37 As a result, the objective in the early-middle 1900s was to “professionalize” the police and  
38 make them autonomous from politics. SAMUEL WALKER, A CRITICAL HISTORY OF POLICE  
39 REFORM: THE EMERGENCE OF PROFESSIONALISM (1977); Stephen J. Schulhofer et al., *American*  
40 *Policing at the Crossroads: Unsustainable Policies and the Procedural Justice Alternative*, 101 J.

1 CRIM. L. & CRIMINOLOGY 335, 339 (2011). Officers received civil-service protection and the only  
2 clear tether to politics was the appointment of the chief of police by the mayor or other city  
3 officials. Nothing quite captured that notion of the professional and autonomous model of policing  
4 so much as radio-dispatched police cars racing around the city to answer calls.

5 By the 1960s, however, it had become clear to the nation that the move to autonomy had  
6 created a rift between the community and the police. In its 1967 Report—in words that  
7 undoubtedly will sound familiar today—the President’s Commission on Law Enforcement and  
8 Observance lamented that in “the very neighborhoods that need and want effective policing the  
9 most . . . there is much distrust of the police, especially among boys and young men.” THE  
10 CHALLENGE OF CRIME IN A FREE SOCIETY: A REPORT BY THE PRESIDENT’S COMMISSION ON LAW  
11 ENFORCEMENT AND ADMINISTRATION OF JUSTICE 99 (1967). The Commission noted that “too  
12 many policemen . . . misunderstand or are indifferent to minority-group aspirations, attitudes, and  
13 customs, and that incidents involving physical or verbal mistreatment of minority-group citizens  
14 do occur and do contribute to the resentment against police.” *Id.* at 100. It described the hostility  
15 and mistrust between police and communities of color as “as serious as any problem the police  
16 have today.” *Id.* at 99; see also THE KERNER REPORT: THE 1968 REPORT OF THE NATIONAL  
17 ADVISORY COMMISSION ON CIVIL DISORDERS (1968) (noting same).

18 The President’s Commission called upon policing agencies to invest in what it termed  
19 “police–community relations”—to endeavor “to acquaint the police and the community with each  
20 other’s problems, and to stimulate action aimed at solving those problems.” PRESIDENT’S  
21 COMMISSION, *supra*, at 100. It encouraged agencies to make community relations “the business of  
22 the department from the chief on down” and to ensure they “play a part in the selection, training,  
23 deployment, and promotion of personnel.” *Id.* And it urged police officials to involve  
24 neighborhood advisory committees and other citizens’ groups in setting policing practices and  
25 priorities.

26 It took another decade for these ideas to catch on, but by the mid-1980s, law-enforcement  
27 leaders had come to embrace a new model of “community” or “neighborhood oriented” policing.  
28 In a 1988 study, David Bayley and Jerome Skolnick cited the “growing and extraordinary  
29 consensus [that] has arisen among selected police executives around the globe that the movement  
30 toward community policing is a positive development.” Jerome H. Skolnick & David H. Bayley,  
31 *Theme and Variation in Community Policing*, 10 CRIME & JUST. 1-2 (1988). Houston Police Chief  
32 Lee Brown declared community policing to be “the most appropriate means of using police  
33 resources to improve the quality of life in neighborhoods throughout the country.” Lee P. Brown,  
34 *Community Policing: A Practical Guide for Police Officials*, PERSPECTIVES ON POLICING 10  
35 (1989). By 1997, more than 85 percent of law-enforcement agencies claimed to have implemented  
36 “community policing” or to be in the process of doing so. Lorie Fridell, *The Results of Three  
37 National Surveys on Community Policing*, COMMUNITY POLICING: THE PAST, PRESENT, AND  
38 FUTURE 39, 42 (2004).

39 Yet, in 2015, a new presidential task force made many of the very same observations as  
40 the ones made almost 50 years earlier. It highlighted the profound mistrust between police and



1 community. PRESIDENT’S TASK FORCE, *supra*, at 5. And it urged policing agencies to embrace  
2 community policing as organizational strategy, to work collaboratively with the public to “co-  
3 produce public safety,” and to give community members a real voice in how their communities  
4 are policed. *Id.* at 3.

5 As it turned out, although many agencies purported to engage in “community policing,”  
6 the reality was that most had adopted only “a relatively modest version of community policing.”  
7 Gary Cordner, *The Survey Data: What They Say and Don’t Say about Community Policing*,  
8 COMMUNITY POLICING: THE PAST, PRESENT, AND FUTURE 59, 65 (2004). In many police  
9 departments, community policing had been “relegated to specialized units composed of a small  
10 number of officers rather than spread across police departments.” Braga, *supra*, at 17. Agencies  
11 were quicker to embrace the related principle of “problem-oriented” policing which emphasized  
12 the need to address underlying community problems as opposed to focusing narrowly on criminal  
13 enforcement. But what was largely absent from the initial rush to community policing was what  
14 Lee Brown described as “‘power sharing’—the idea that “responsibility for making decisions is  
15 shared by the police and the community.” Brown, *supra* at 5.

16 There are a variety of explanations for the failure of community policing to take hold.  
17 Community policing is resource-intensive, and there is a perception, at least in some communities,  
18 that it diverts attention away from responding to calls for service. Wesley G. Skogan, *Community*  
19 *Policing: Common Impediments to Success*, COMMUNITY POLICING: THE PAST, PRESENT, AND  
20 FUTURE 159, 165 (2004). Community policing also has encountered resistance from officers who  
21 may see it as “social work” that is divorced from real policing. Michael L. Benson & Kent R.  
22 Kerley, *Does Community-Orientated Policing Help Build Stronger Communities?*, 3 POLICE  
23 QUARTERLY 46, 62 (2000). Finally, community policing asks a lot of the community. Absent  
24 genuine power sharing and a sense of collective ownership of policing decisions, it may be difficult  
25 to sustain. Schulhofer, *supra*, at 343; Skogan, *Community Policing*, *supra*, at 166; Benson, *supra*,  
26 at 63.

27 In addition, this notion of close collaboration often conflicted with other pressing items on  
28 the agenda. As crime rates continued to climb through the 1980s and early 1990s, a more assertive  
29 vision of policing took hold. In a number of jurisdictions, agencies turned toward “order  
30 maintenance policing” or “broken windows” policing—which likewise “made it a priority for  
31 police to address local problems,” but typically “assigned to the police themselves the  
32 responsibility for identifying” what those problems were. Schulhofer, *supra*, at 340. These trends  
33 were fueled and amplified by the national “war on drugs” and later the “war on terror,” both of  
34 which shifted emphasis and resources away from a community-oriented approach. See, e.g., Sue  
35 Rahr & Stephen K. Rice, *From Warriors to Guardians: Recommitting American Police Culture to*  
36 *Democratic Ideals*, NEW PERSPECTIVES IN POLICING BULLETIN 2 (2015); DAVID C. COOPER,  
37 ARRESTED DEVELOPMENT: A VETERAN POLICE CHIEF SOUNDS OFF ABOUT PROTEST, RACISM, AND  
38 THE SEVEN STEPS NECESSARY TO IMPROVE OUR NATION’S POLICE 2 (2011).

39 Today, there is growing consensus that effective policing requires a renewed commitment  
40 to community policing and its core ideals. And, commendably, some departments across the

1 country have begun to take tangible steps toward giving communities a greater say in how they  
2 are policed.

3       2. *Elements of community policing.* Over time, community policing has come to be seen as  
4 a catch-all term for a variety of programs and strategies, from foot patrols and collaborative  
5 problem-solving to youth programs and citizen–police academies to a variety of enforcement  
6 tactics, including hot-spots policing, order-maintenance policing, and focused deterrence. Braga,  
7 *supra*, at 17; Cordner, *supra*, at 61; IMPLEMENTING COMMUNITY POLICING: LESSONS FROM 12  
8 AGENCIES at xv (2009).

9       The emphasis in this Section on close partnership and collaboration between police and the  
10 communities they serve reflects what many have identified as the defining feature of community  
11 policing. See, e.g., BUREAU OF JUSTICE ASSISTANCE, UNDERSTANDING COMMUNITY POLICING at  
12 vii (1994) (“Community policing is, in essence, a collaboration between the police and the  
13 community that identifies and solves community problems.”); PRESIDENT’S TASK FORCE, *supra*,  
14 at 41 (“Community policing is a philosophy that promotes organizational strategies that support  
15 the systematic use of partnerships and problem-solving techniques to proactively address the  
16 immediate conditions that give rise to public safety issues.”); Wesley G. Skogan, *Community*  
17 *Participation and Community Policing*, in HOW TO RECOGNIZE GOOD POLICING at 88 (Jean-Paul  
18 Brodeur ed., 1998) (“Every definition of community policing shares the idea that the police and  
19 the community must work together to define and develop solutions to problems.”). This Section  
20 recognizes that partnering with the community often means partnering with community  
21 organizations and other government entities, which requires agencies to both proactively seek out  
22 those relationships and to be open to overtures by other groups. Often, addressing community  
23 problems will require a coordinated response by both governmental and nongovernmental actors.  
24 See, e.g., *Developing Coordinated Community Response Teams*, UN WOMEN,  
25 <http://www.endvawnow.org/en/articles/319-developing-coordinated-community-responses-.html>  
26 (last visited May 22, 2017). This Section also is consistent with research on procedural justice,  
27 which underscores the importance of transparency and voice, not only in the context of individual  
28 encounters but also for the agency’s relationship with its community. See, e.g., TOM R. TYLER &  
29 YUEN J. HUO, TRUST IN THE LAW: ENCOURAGING COOPERATION WITH THE POLICE AND COURTS  
30 (2002); Tracey L. Meares & Peter Neyroud, *Rightful Policing* 5, NAT’L INST. OF JUSTICE 11-12  
31 (2015).

32       Likewise, many of the core components of community policing identified here—including  
33 organizational transformation, collaborative problem-solving, community participation, and  
34 police–community interaction in social and other nonenforcement settings—are consistent with  
35 what law-enforcement professionals have long emphasized as essential components of the  
36 community-policing approach. See, e.g., COMMUNITY ORIENTATED POLICE SERVICES,  
37 COMMUNITY POLICING DEFINED (2012) (identifying the three components of community policing  
38 as “community partnerships,” “organizational transformation,” and “problem-solving”); Wesley  
39 G. Skogan, *The Promise of Community Policing*, in POLICE INNOVATION: CONTRASTING

1 PERSPECTIVES 27, 28 (David Weisburd & Anthony A. Braga eds., 2006) (noting that community  
2 policing has “three core elements: citizen involvement, problem solving, and decentralization”).

3       However, more so than some of the earlier resources on community policing, e.g., BUREAU  
4 OF JUSTICE ASSISTANCE, UNDERSTANDING COMMUNITY POLICING (1994); COMMUNITY  
5 ORIENTATED POLICE SERVICES, COMMUNITY POLICING DEFINED (2012), these Principles  
6 underscore the importance not only of partnering with the community to identify and address  
7 public-safety problems, but also of giving community members a meaningful voice in the  
8 discussions and debates that determine how their communities are policed. This element of  
9 community policing—what Lee Brown called “power sharing”—was one of the central  
10 recommendations made by the President’s Task Force throughout its Final Report. PRESIDENT’S  
11 TASK FORCE, *supra*, at 3, 45, 93. In order to achieve the sort of cultural transformation and trust-  
12 building that community policing promises, this last component is essential.



## CHAPTER 4 POLICE ENCOUNTERS

### § 4.01. Officer-Initiated Encounters with Individuals

An encounter is a face-to-face interaction between an officer and a member of the public, conducted for the purpose of investigating unlawful conduct or performing a caretaking function. It does not include social, non-investigative, or non-caretaking interactions between a police official and a member of the public.

Consistent with current law, this Chapter adopts the following terms and definitions:

(a) “Initial encounter”: An encounter in which the officer does nothing to impede the individual from leaving or otherwise terminating the encounter—and a reasonable person would in fact feel free to do so.

(b) “Stop”: An encounter that is brief in duration and does not constitute an arrest and that a reasonable person would not feel free to leave or otherwise terminate.

(c) “Frisk”: A pat-down search of an individual’s body during an encounter, conducted over the individual’s clothing, for the purpose of finding a weapon.

(d) “Custodial arrest”: An encounter in which an individual is taken into custody and transferred to a stationhouse or other temporary holding facility.

#### Comment:

*a. Encounters, generally.* Face-to-face encounters between officers and members of the public are an essential—and common—aspect of police work. Officers approach people on the street to ask for information, or because they see someone behaving suspiciously and wish to investigate further. Officers conduct traffic stops and issue citations to enforce traffic laws. They break up fights and help defuse tense situations. And when necessary, they take individuals into custody. All of these are essential tools of law enforcement that, when used appropriately, enable officers to help maintain public safety.

At the same time, as discussed in greater detail throughout this Chapter, these sorts of interactions have the potential to erode the very sense of public safety and security that they are meant to promote. When officers treat residents in a harsh or aggressive manner, routinely stop

1 individuals who are innocent of any criminal offense, or fail to explain their actions when there  
2 is ample opportunity to do so, community members may come to mistrust the police and  
3 question the legitimacy of law enforcement. Individuals who do not trust the police may be less  
4 likely to report crime or otherwise cooperate and engage with law enforcement in the co-  
5 production of safety. They also may be less willing to comply with the law. In addition,  
6 encounters that are unduly coercive, or are conducted in a discriminatory manner, can impose  
7 physical, dignitary, and other harms on the individuals involved.

8         These Principles offer guidance to agencies and to officers on how to use these tools in a  
9 way that promotes, rather than detracts from, law enforcement’s public-safety mission. Although  
10 policymaking around the use of encounters often is said to involve a tradeoff between liberty and  
11 privacy on the one hand and security on the other, that is not always the case. There are instances  
12 in which certain police tactics actually can undermine safety while intruding on liberty and  
13 privacy. When police act in a manner that is unduly coercive or intrusive, they may in fact be  
14 undermining the broader goal of keeping the public safe. And even when there is a tradeoff—  
15 which does occur at times—that line must be drawn carefully to maximize the benefits of  
16 policing while minimizing any harms. The Principles in this Chapter are designed to ensure that  
17 encounters between officers and members of the public are conducted in a manner that promotes  
18 the public’s sense of safety and security, while at the same time promoting the safety of the  
19 officers carrying out those actions.

20         *b. Social interactions excluded.* The focus of this Chapter is on interactions between  
21 officers and members of the public conducted for an investigative or community-caretaking  
22 purpose. The community-caretaking purpose refers to actions that are not initiated for the  
23 purpose of investigating crime, such as when an officer enters a home to render aid to someone  
24 inside. Beyond investigative and community-caretaking actions, officers also interact with  
25 members of the public in order to better get to know the community and learn about its problems  
26 and concerns. These sorts of interactions are not the subject of this Chapter, and are addressed  
27 separately in the Section on community policing, § 1.07.

28         *c. Initial encounters.* These Principles use the term “initial encounter” to describe any  
29 interaction between an officer and a member of the public that is investigative in character, but  
30 legally falls short of a stop or an arrest. Although courts sometimes describe these as “voluntary”  
31 or “consensual” encounters, these Principles intentionally do not adopt that language because of

1 a concern that at least some of the encounters characterized this way by courts are not in fact  
2 voluntary or consensual.

3 *d. Stops.* Consistent with constitutional law, these Principles define a “stop” as an  
4 encounter in which a reasonable person would not feel free to leave or to otherwise terminate the  
5 interaction. At the same time, agencies should be aware that many individuals may not in fact  
6 feel free to leave in circumstances that courts have said fall short of a stop. Studies consistently  
7 have shown that individuals often do not feel free to walk away or decline to speak with  
8 officers—even if officers behave in a nonthreatening manner, or make clear that the individual  
9 may terminate the encounter at any point. Indeed, the notion that individuals should feel free to  
10 terminate an encounter initiated by law enforcement is somewhat in tension with the notion, also  
11 reflected in case law, that individuals should assist law enforcement and comply with law-  
12 enforcement requests. When officers ask a motorist, “may I see your license?” that is clearly a  
13 command even when phrased as a question. It is unclear whether all individuals would  
14 understand the question “may I speak with you?” differently. In addition, the degree to which an  
15 individual feels free to leave may depend on that person’s race, age, or gender, as well as prior  
16 experiences with law enforcement, which typically are factors that courts do not take into  
17 account, and of which officers themselves may be unaware. In cases of ambiguity, officers  
18 should ensure that they have a legitimate law-enforcement justification for initiating the  
19 encounter.

20 *e. Custodial arrests.* These Principles distinguish between a custodial arrest—in which an  
21 individual is taken into custody and transported to the stationhouse or to a temporary detention  
22 facility—and a brief detention out in the field conducted for the purpose of issuing a citation.  
23 Although both a citation and a custodial arrest must be supported by probable cause, a custodial  
24 arrest involves a much greater intrusion into the interests of the arrested person’s privacy,  
25 autonomy, and bodily integrity, and also potentially exposes the arresting officer to a greater risk  
26 of harm. For those reasons, these Principles urge legislatures and agencies to permit officers to  
27 issue a summons or a citation in lieu of custodial arrest, and encourage officers to in fact do so  
28 when permissible under state law and consistent with the goal of public safety. See § 4.04. These  
29 Principles also distinguish between custodial arrests and stops for the purpose of issuing a  
30 summons in describing the circumstances under which officers should be permitted to conduct a  
31 frisk or a search. See § 4.06.

**REPORTERS' NOTES**

1           1. *Encounters, generally.* Leaders both in and out of law enforcement have emphasized  
2 the need to ensure that encounters are conducted in a manner that promotes public safety and  
3 police legitimacy. In particular, officials have recognized that the goals of safety and legitimacy  
4 are not in conflict with one another, but in fact are interrelated: Tactics that emphasize crime  
5 reduction at the expense of trust and security do not make communities safer as a result. See,  
6 e.g., Police Executive Research Forum, *Constitutional Policing as a Cornerstone of Community*  
7 *Policing* 16 (2015) (“[o]ur past approaches to policing didn’t decrease the gap between us and  
8 the community. Increasing arrests for mostly nonviolent offenses didn’t necessarily make our  
9 communities safer” (quoting Chief Ron Teachman)). The International Association of Chiefs of  
10 Police (IACP), for example, has acknowledged that use of heavy-handed enforcement tactics by  
11 departments has resulted in “a reduction in perceptions of police fairness, legitimacy, and  
12 effectiveness,” to the detriment of public safety. IACP National Policy Summit on Community–  
13 Police Relations: Advancing a Culture of Cohesion and Community Trust (2015). Numerous  
14 studies support this conclusion. See Chris L. Gibson, Samuel Walker, Wesley G. Jennings & J.  
15 Mitchell Miller, *The Impact of Traffic Stops on Calling the Police for Help*, 20 CRIM. JUST.  
16 POL’Y REV. 10, 1-21 (2009); Tom R. Tyler, Jeffrey Fagan & Amanda Geller, *Street Stops and*  
17 *Police Legitimacy: Teachable Moments in Young Urban Men’s Legal Socialization* (Columbia  
18 Law School Public Law & Legal Theory Working Paper Group Paper No. 14-380, April 2014);  
19 Jennifer Fratello, Andrés F. Rengifo & Jennifer Trone, Vera Institute of Justice, *Coming of Age*  
20 *with Stop and Frisk: Experiences, Self-Perceptions, and Public Safety Implications* (2013).

21           2. *Initial encounters and stops.* Studies have shown that individuals may not in fact feel  
22 free to terminate encounters that courts would describe as “consensual” or “voluntary” as a  
23 matter of law. Janice Nadler writes that “empirical studies over the last several decades on the  
24 social psychology of compliance, conformity, social influence, and politeness have all converged  
25 on a single conclusion: the extent to which people feel free to refuse is extremely limited under  
26 situationally induced pressures” that are common to police–citizen encounters. Janice Nadler, *No*  
27 *Need to Shout: Bus Sweeps and the Psychology of Coercion*, 2002 SUP. CT. REV. 153, 155  
28 (2002); David K. Kessler, *Free to Leave? An Empirical Look at the Fourth Amendment’s Seizure*  
29 *Standard*, 99 J. CRIM. LAW & CRIMINOLOGY 51 (Fall 2008); Alisa M. Smith, et al., *Testing*  
30 *Judicial Assumptions of the “Consensual” Encounter*, 14 FLA. COASTAL L. REV. 285 (2013);  
31 Kathryne M. Young & Christin L. Munsch, *Fact and Fiction in Constitutional Criminal*  
32 *Procedure*, 66 S.C. L. REV. 445 (2014). In one survey, less than one-quarter of respondents said  
33 that they would feel free to walk away if an officer approached them on the sidewalk and asked  
34 to speak with them, even if respondents did not wish to talk with the officer. Kessler, *supra*, at  
35 53. Respondents who said they knew they had a legal right to walk away were only slightly more  
36 likely to feel free to do so. *Id.* at 78. As William Stuntz notes, “the truth is that ordinary people  
37 never feel free to terminate a conversation with a police officer.” William J. Stuntz, *Terry’s*  
38 *Impossibility*, 72 ST. JOHN’S L. REV. 1213, 1215 (1998). See also Tracey Maclin, *Black and Blue*  
39 *Encounters—Some Preliminary Thoughts about Fourth Amendment Seizures: Should Race*



1 *Matter?*, 26 VAL. U. L. REV. 243, 250 (1991) (“common sense teaches us that most of us do not  
2 have the chutzpah or stupidity to tell a police officer to ‘get lost.’”).

3 A number of courts likewise have recognized that individuals may feel compelled to  
4 comply with officer requests, even when they are delivered in a polite and nonthreatening  
5 manner. The New Jersey Supreme Court, for example, has emphasized that “many persons,  
6 perhaps most, would view the request of a police officer to make a search as having the force of  
7 law.” *State v. Johnson*, 346 A.2d 66, 68 (N.J. 1975). The U.S. Supreme Court itself appears to  
8 acknowledge the gap between legal and actual voluntariness—in *Schneekloth v. Bustamonte*, the  
9 Court repeatedly used scare quotes around the terms “voluntary” and “consent.” 412 U.S. 218,  
10 227, 228 (1973). The Court emphasized that the legal standard for voluntariness must strike a  
11 balance between legitimate law-enforcement interests and the need to ensure “the absence of  
12 coercion”—and that the Court’s test reflects “a fair accommodation” of the interests involved. *Id.*  
13 at 227.

14 3. *Custodial arrests*. Both state and federal courts have recognized a distinction between  
15 a “custodial” arrest and a brief detention out in the field conducted for the purpose of issuing a  
16 summons, which some have referred to as a “non-custodial arrest.” See, e.g., *People v. Bland*,  
17 884 P.2d 312, 316 (Colo. 1994) (distinguishing “between custodial arrests, which are made for  
18 the purpose of taking a person to the stationhouse . . . and non-custodial arrests, which involve  
19 only temporary detention for the purpose of issuing a summons.”); *Linnet v. State*, 647 S.W.2d  
20 672, 674-675 (Tex. Crim. App. 1983) (same); *State v. McKenna*, 958 P.2d 1017, 1021-1022  
21 (1998) (same). The U.S. Supreme Court has likewise made clear that there is a constitutionally  
22 significant difference between a seizure for the purposes of issuing a summons or a citation, and  
23 a full custodial arrest. *Knowles v. Iowa*, 525 U.S. 113 (1998) (holding that a warrantless search  
24 incident to arrest is permissible only in the context of a custodial arrest). See also David A.  
25 Moran, *Traffic Stops, Littering Tickets, and Police Warnings: The Case for A Fourth Amendment*  
26 *Non-Custodial Arrest Doctrine*, 37 AM. CRIM. L. REV. 1143 (2000). There is no standard  
27 definition of a “custodial arrest” under the law. Courts and legislatures define it in different ways  
28 for different purposes. See Rachel A. Harmon, *Why Arrest?*, 115 MICH. L. REV. 307, 310 (2016).  
29 The definition here emphasizes police custody and conveyance to a law-enforcement facility,  
30 and does not depend on whether a suspect is searched thoroughly or “booked” such that a  
31 permanent record is made of the encounter.

## 32 § 4.02. Justification for Encounters

33 (a) **Absent state or federal law to the contrary, an officer may, in any location in**  
34 **which the officer is lawfully present:**

35 (1) **conduct an initial encounter with an individual without any suspicion that**  
36 **the individual is involved in or possesses evidence of a crime;**

1           **(2) conduct a stop of an individual based on reasonable suspicion to believe**  
2           **that the individual is involved in or possesses evidence of a crime;**

3           **(3) issue a summons or a citation to an individual based on probable cause**  
4           **that a crime or a violation has been committed; and**

5           **(4) conduct a custodial arrest of an individual based on probable cause that**  
6           **the individual has committed a felony or a misdemeanor, so long as an arrest is**  
7           **permitted under state law.**

8           **(b) Agencies should ensure that officers exercise this authority consistent with**  
9           **§§ 4.03 to 4.07.**

10           **(c) Encounters that would not be permissible under this Section because officers**  
11           **lack the required level of suspicion should not occur at all, unless they are conducted**  
12           **consistent with the requirements of Chapter 5, dealing with suspicionless searches and**  
13           **seizures.**

14           **Comment:**

15           *a. Generally.* This Section describes the minimum level of suspicion or cause that an  
16 officer must have in order to initiate an encounter, conduct a stop, issue a summons, or make an  
17 arrest. It largely tracks what courts have said are the threshold constitutional requirements for  
18 those actions. However, just because officers *may* conduct a stop or an arrest does not mean that  
19 doing so is appropriate or consistent with the goals of public safety. Section 4.03 sets out  
20 additional factors that agencies should consider in providing guidance to officers on whether any  
21 of these actions are appropriate in a given case.

22           *b. Initial encounters.* As a matter of federal constitutional law, an officer may approach  
23 an individual for any reason so long as the officer does nothing to impede the individual's  
24 freedom to leave or otherwise terminate the encounter—and so long as a reasonable person  
25 would feel free to walk away or otherwise terminate the encounter. These Principles accept that  
26 understanding, recognizing nonetheless that there is a degree of fiction in the claim that  
27 individuals do indeed feel free to leave or terminate encounters with the police. Some  
28 jurisdictions have imposed additional requirements on initial encounters—New York, for  
29 example, requires that officers have an “objective, credible reason” to approach a person on the  
30 street—these Principles do not go that route. Experience suggests that such requirements are both  
31 difficult to enforce and largely ineffective in addressing the concerns with the officer-initiated

1 encounters described throughout this Chapter. Instead, it is important for agencies, consistent  
2 with § 4.03, to provide guidance and training to officers as to when these sorts of encounters are  
3 appropriate, as well as how they should be conducted to minimize the risk of undermining  
4 legitimacy and trust.

5 *c. Stops based on reasonable suspicion.* This Section adopts the standard first announced  
6 in *Terry v. Ohio*, 88 S. Ct. 1868 (1968), that a police officer may briefly detain a person or  
7 vehicle if the officer has reasonable suspicion to believe that the target of the stop is involved in  
8 or has evidence of criminal activity. Reasonable suspicion is more than a hunch. Officers must  
9 be able to narrate the reasons for their suspicion. Neither race, nor any other protected status,  
10 such as gender identity, should be used as a basis for reasonable suspicion to justify a stop,  
11 unless the characteristic is part of a specific suspect description that includes substantially more  
12 information than the person's race or protected status.

13 Agencies also should consider requiring officers to articulate the specific offense that  
14 they believe has occurred or is about to occur. Although in *Terry* itself the officer was able to  
15 specify clearly the crime in question, courts since have upheld stops based on more generalized  
16 suspicion of criminal activity—for example, flight from an officer in a high-crime area. Even if  
17 legally permissible, these sorts of stops should be discouraged. Studies suggest that stops based  
18 on vague or generalized criteria are less likely to lead to arrest or to turn up any evidence of  
19 criminal activity, and therefore may result in unnecessary intrusions. There also is evidence to  
20 suggest that when officers rely on such criteria, racially discriminatory and class-based effects  
21 emerge.

22 A stop based on reasonable suspicion must be brief, typically no longer than 20 minutes,  
23 and must be limited in scope to investigating the offense that the officer suspects and can  
24 articulate, unless during the course of the stop the officer develops reasonable suspicion to  
25 believe that another offense has occurred or is about to occur. A stop that exceeds the scope or  
26 duration permitted on the basis of reasonable suspicion becomes a *de facto* arrest, and is  
27 unlawful absent probable cause to support it.

28 Whenever possible, the grounds for the stop should be memorialized in some fashion,  
29 preferably prior to the stop. Many officers today wear body cameras, which typically must be  
30 turned on before such stops. It should be a simple matter for the officer to state—when time  
31 permits—the basis for the stop. When time does not permit, the basis for the stop can be

1 recorded on a form pertaining to the stop immediately after the fact. In addition, principles of  
2 procedural justice require that, absent some public-safety reason to the contrary, officers inform  
3 individuals why they are being stopped at some point during the encounter.

4 *d. Past crimes as a basis for reasonable suspicion.* Like probable cause, reasonable  
5 suspicion has a temporal dimension and may become stale. Although officers may stop an  
6 individual based on suspicion of a completed offense, officers must have some basis for thinking  
7 that the stop will in fact further an investigation of that offense. For example, if an officer sees a  
8 vehicle that previously had been seen leaving the scene of a robbery, an officer may have  
9 reasonable suspicion for stopping the vehicle to speak to the driver, even if the robbery occurred  
10 several days or weeks earlier. On the other hand, information that someone had been in  
11 possession of narcotics or a firearm at some earlier point in time would not justify a stop absent  
12 additional reason to believe that the individual currently is in possession of contraband or a  
13 weapon.

14 *e. Arrests.* An arrest is a more serious intrusion than a stop, and must therefore be based  
15 on a higher level of suspicion. An arrest must be supported by probable cause that the individual  
16 detained has committed a crime or a violation. Probable cause requires that an officer have  
17 sufficient facts to cause a reasonably prudent person to think that a crime is being or has been  
18 committed. An officer may develop probable cause based on direct observation of potential  
19 criminal activity, or based on a credible, corroborated tip from an informant. See also § X.XX  
20 (confidential informants). As with stops based on reasonable suspicion, officers should articulate  
21 the basis for an arrest as proximate as possible thereto. Given the wide array of criminal offenses  
22 for which police have discretion to arrest, an arrest should not occur unless it is necessary to  
23 protect the public or to ensure that the person appears in court. See § 4.05.

24 *f. Programmatic seizures.* The Principles in this Chapter apply to officer-initiated  
25 encounters that are based on suspicion specific to the individual or individuals involved. As  
26 discussed in greater detail in Chapter 5, officers also are permitted to search and seize individuals  
27 as part of a suspicionless search and seizure program, such as a sobriety checkpoint or airport  
28 security. Such programmatic searches and seizures need not be based on individualized  
29 suspicion, but must instead be conducted in an evenhanded and nonarbitrary manner, according  
30 to a policy that is set out in advance. See § 4.05.

**REPORTERS' NOTES**

1           These Principles generally adopt the basic framework first announced in *Terry v. Ohio*,  
2 392 U.S. 1 (1968), which recognizes three broad categories of police–citizen encounters: initial  
3 encounters, which do not require any suspicion; investigative stops, which must be supported by  
4 reasonable suspicion; and arrests, which must be supported by probable cause. As the U.S.  
5 Supreme Court explained in *Terry*, this approach accommodates the fact “that in dealing with the  
6 rapidly unfolding and often dangerous situations on city streets the police are in need of an  
7 escalating set of flexible responses, graduated in relation to the amount of information they  
8 possess.” *Id.* at 10.

9           Courts repeatedly have emphasized that although a stop falls short of an arrest, it  
10 nevertheless constitutes a significant intrusion, and that officers must be able to point to specific,  
11 articulable facts relating to the person stopped that are indicative of involvement in a criminal  
12 offense. Department policies likewise mirror these admonitions. See, e.g., SEATTLE POLICE  
13 DEPARTMENT MANUAL § 6.220 (defining “reasonable suspicion” as requiring “specific, objective,  
14 articulable facts” that “would create a well-founded suspicion that there is a substantial  
15 possibility” of criminal conduct); NYPD PATROL GUIDE § 212-11 (“The officer must be able to  
16 articulate specific facts establishing justification for the stop; hunches or gut feelings are not  
17 sufficient.”). In *Terry* itself, the Court relied on the fact that Officer MacFadden had seen three  
18 men take turns walking by the same store 24 times and peering into the window, conferring with  
19 one another in between trips—behavior that MacFadden concluded was strongly indicative of an  
20 impending robbery. The Court recognized that, in these circumstances, although MacFadden  
21 lacked probable cause to make an arrest, it was reasonable for him to briefly detain Terry to  
22 confirm or dispel his suspicions. 392 U.S. at 4.

23           In the decades after *Terry* was decided, however, courts—including the U.S. Supreme  
24 Court—have interpreted reasonable suspicion to require much less than the constellation of facts  
25 that had prompted Officer MacFadden to act. In *Illinois v. Wardlow*, 120 S. Ct. 673 (2000), for  
26 example, the Court upheld a stop based on “unprovoked flight” from the police in a “high crime  
27 area.” As many have since pointed out, factors such as these may not be indicative of criminality,  
28 particularly in communities in which there is considerable fear or mistrust of the police. See, e.g.,  
29 *Commonwealth v. Warren*, 58 N.E.3d 333, 342 (Mass. 2016) (the fact that in some communities  
30 Black and Hispanic males are disproportionately singled out by the police “suggests a reason for  
31 flight totally unrelated to consciousness of guilt.”). Courts also have permitted stops at airports  
32 and bus terminals based on a drug-courier profile that deems virtually *all* conduct potentially  
33 suspect. As Judge Pratt pointed out in *U.S. v. Hooper*, a traveler’s actions under the profile may  
34 be suspicious if the person “arrived late at night” or “arrived early in the morning”; used a “one-  
35 way ticket” or a “round-trip ticket”; “traveled alone” or “travelled with a companion”; “acted too  
36 nervous” or “acted too calm”—just to name a few. 935 F.2d 484, 499 (2d Cir. 1991) (Pratt, J.,  
37 dissenting); see also *United States v. Sokolow*, 831 F.2d 1413, 1418 (9th Cir. 1987), *rev’d* 490  
38 U.S. 1 (1989) (noting the profile’s “chameleon-like way of adapting to any particular set of  
39 observations”).

1           Officers in agencies across the country have relied on these sorts of nebulous factors to  
2 justify literally millions of stops, an overwhelming percentage of which have failed to turn up  
3 any evidence. In New York, for example, researchers found that a majority of the more than 4.4  
4 million stops were justified based on factors such as the suspect being in a “high crime area” or  
5 exhibiting “furtive movements.” Jeffrey Fagan & Amanda Geller, *Following the Script:  
6 Narratives of Suspicion in Terry Stops in Street Policing*, 82 U. CHI. L. REV. 51 (2015). Officers  
7 recovered guns in just 0.1 percent (one-tenth of one percent) of stops. See *Floyd v. New York*,  
8 959 F. Supp. 2d 540, 542 (S.D.N.Y. 2013). Philadelphia police stopped more than 200,000  
9 pedestrians in the first half of 2012, and recovered just three guns. See Barry Friedman &  
10 Cynthia Benin Stein, *Redefining What’s “Reasonable”: The Protections for Policing*, 84 GEO.  
11 WASH. L. REV. 281 (2016) (citing these and other comparable statistics); Bernard E. Harcourt &  
12 Tracey L. Meares, *Randomization and the Fourth Amendment*, 78 U. CHI. L. REV. 809, 854-858  
13 (2011) (citing additional studies).

14           In addition to the sheer number of stops that produce no evidence of criminality, the  
15 evidence is overwhelming that when stops are used with frequency, the impact of those stops  
16 falls disproportionately—often extremely disproportionately—on people of color. In New York,  
17 Black and Hispanic individuals accounted for 52 percent of the population, and 83 percent of  
18 individuals stopped. *Floyd*, supra, at 559. In Los Angeles, one study found that African  
19 Americans were more than 2.5 times more likely to be stopped than were whites. Ian Ayres &  
20 Jonathan Borowsky, *A Study of Racially Disparate Outcomes in the Los Angeles Police  
21 Department* (2008). See also U.S. DEPT. OF JUSTICE, INVESTIGATION OF THE NEWARK POLICE  
22 DEPARTMENT 19 (2014) (hereinafter NEWARK DOJ REPORT) (finding that stops  
23 disproportionately impacted minority residents); U.S. DEPT. OF JUSTICE, INVESTIGATION OF THE  
24 NEWARK POLICE DEPARTMENT 47 (2016) (same).

25           A federal court ultimately found that the justification New York City Police Department  
26 (NYPD) officers provided for a substantial percentage of stops fell short of reasonable suspicion.  
27 But it is hard to deny that the permissive stance that courts generally have adopted in defining  
28 “reasonable suspicion” has given officers considerable leeway to conduct these sorts of  
29 encounters. Given the courts’ permissive stance, these Principles are designed to provide officers  
30 and agencies with more sturdy guidance to ensure that encounters are safe, productive, and  
31 supportive of more trusting relationships between officers and members of the public.

32           Although a few scholars have argued in favor of abandoning the reasonable-suspicion  
33 standard and replacing it with a more stringent probable-cause standard, these Principles  
34 advocate instead a return to the principles articulated in *Terry* itself. Throughout the opinion, the  
35 Justices emphasized the need for “specificity in the information upon which police action is  
36 predicated”—and detailed at length the constellation of facts that MacFadden had observed over  
37 a period of time that led him to suspect Terry and his companions of planning a robbery. In  
38 *Terry*, Officer MacFadden briefly stopped three individuals he suspected of committing a  
39 “particular crime[] in progress.” Today, agencies instruct officers to “proactively polic[e] people  
40 that they suspect *could* be offenders.” Tracey L. Meares, *Programming Errors: Understanding*

1 *the Constitutionality of Stop-and-Frisk as a Program, Not an Incident*, 82 U. CHI. L. REV. 1, 164  
2 (2015).

3 Importantly, these Principles make clear that officers should be able to articulate not only  
4 the basis for their suspicion, but also the particular offense they that they suspect. See, e.g.,  
5 TUCSON POLICE DEPARTMENT GENERAL ORDER 2214.1 (adopting this standard); Friedman &  
6 Stein, *supra* at 347 (advocating this approach). This standard would help to ensure that officer  
7 suspicions are indeed based on more than a mere “hunch.” In addition, this standard would  
8 encourage officers to pay more attention to behavioral cues indicative of criminal activity  
9 (which, like “casing,” typically are indicative of a particular crime), as opposed to non-  
10 behavioral characteristics such as location or manner of dress. Studies suggest that stops based  
11 on more specific, behavioral factors are more likely to turn up evidence or contraband and lead  
12 to overall reductions in crime. For example, a study conducted by the New York State Attorney  
13 General’s office of NYPD stop data found that stops based on factors that clearly gave rise to  
14 reasonable suspicion were substantially more likely to result in an arrest than were stops based  
15 on vaguer criteria that arguably fell short of reasonable suspicion. See Civil Rights Bureau,  
16 Office of the Attorney General, *The New York City Police Department’s “Stop & Frisk”*  
17 *Practices* (1999); see also Sharad Goel, Justin M. Rao & Ravi Shroff, *Precinct or Prejudice?*  
18 *Understanding Racial Disparities in New York City’s Stop-and-Frisk Policy*, 10 ANN. APPL.  
19 STAT. 365 (2016); Fagan, *Terry’s Original Sin*, 2016 U. CHI. LEGAL F. 43. Studies also suggest  
20 that officers are more likely to rely on non-behavioral cues in deciding whether to stop racial  
21 minorities. Geoffrey P. Alpert, John M. MacDonald & Roger G. Dunham, *Police Suspicion and*  
22 *Discretionary Decision Making During Citizen Stops*, 43 CRIMINOLOGY 407 (2005). To the  
23 extent that stops based on non-behavioral cues also are less effective, this raises serious  
24 procedural-justice concerns.

25 At the same time—in view of the difficulty that courts have had in defining the precise  
26 requirements of reasonable suspicion—these Principles do not advocate in favor of the approach  
27 followed in New York state, which requires causal thresholds for all encounters that legally fall  
28 short of a stop. Under *People v. De Bour*, 352 N.E.2d 562 (N.Y. 1976), officers in New York  
29 must have “an objective, credible reason” to approach a person on the street, and must have  
30 “founded suspicion that criminality is afoot” in order to ask more prying questions. As Professor  
31 Debra Livingston notes, the New York courts’ approach “has not really worked” to accomplish  
32 the goal of “protect[ing] individuals from arbitrary or intimidating police conduct.” Debra  
33 Livingston, *Police Patrol, Judicial Integrity, and the Limits of Judicial Control*, 72 ST. JOHN’S L.  
34 REV. 1353 (1998). A survey of New York cases makes clear that “cases with almost identical  
35 facts produce different results.” *Id.* at 1361 n.12 (quoting BARRY KAMINS, *NEW YORK SEARCH*  
36 *AND SEIZURE* 103 (1997)); see also WAYNE R. LAFAYE, 4 *SEARCH & SEIZURE* § 9.4(e) (5th ed.)  
37 (noting similar confusion); Mark A. Leslie, *The Gradation of Fourth Amendment Doctrine in the*  
38 *Context of Street Detentions: People v. De Bour*, 38 OHIO ST. L.J. 409 (1977) (expressing  
39 concern that “police may be prompted by lower requirements of suspicion to act more freely  
40 upon their instincts.”).

1           Instead, these Principles urge agencies to ensure that officers understand that initial  
2 encounters may be unwelcome or nonconsensual, and that officers should—consistent with  
3 § 4.03—limit the use of such encounters to circumstances in which they directly further  
4 important law-enforcement interests and do not cause undue harm. Officers also should  
5 minimize the intrusiveness of all encounters by following the principles of procedural justice  
6 outlined in § 4.03(b).

### 7 **§ 4.03. Ensuring the Legitimacy of Police Encounters**

8           **(a) Officers should exercise their authority to approach, stop, and arrest individuals,**  
9 **recognized in § 4.02, in a manner that promotes public safety and positive police–**  
10 **community relations, and minimizes undue harm.**

11           **(b) Officers should establish the legitimacy of their encounters with members of the**  
12 **public by treating individuals with dignity and respect, explaining the basis for the officers’**  
13 **actions, giving individuals an opportunity to speak and be heard, and engaging in**  
14 **behaviors that convey neutrality, fairness, and trustworthy motives.**

15           **(c) Agencies should ensure that officers carry out these principles through policy,**  
16 **recordkeeping, and training and supervision of officers.**

#### 17 **Comment:**

18           *a. Generally.* Officers have considerable discretion in deciding whether to initiate an  
19 encounter with a member of the public, issue a summons, or conduct an arrest. In some  
20 circumstances, the necessity of officer intervention is readily apparent. An officer may witness a  
21 crime in progress or observe an individual driving recklessly. Or an officer may see someone  
22 behaving in a manner that very likely is indicative of criminal activity. In *Terry v. Ohio*, 88 S.  
23 Ct. 1868 (1968), an officer observed a pattern of behavior that gave him strong reason to believe  
24 that the individuals involved had been casing a jewelry store. Intervening in those circumstances  
25 is good police work, and generally should be encouraged.

26           Much of the controversy surrounding the use of officer-initiated encounters falls on the  
27 other end of the spectrum. In some jurisdictions, officers are instructed to make large numbers of  
28 traffic and pedestrian stops in order to create opportunities to conduct searches or frisks to look  
29 for weapons or contraband. Officers make stops on the basis of less individualized, vague  
30 criteria, such as claiming that an individual has engaged in “furtive movements” while in a high-  
31 crime area. Officers also make stops to investigate low-level infractions, such as riding a bicycle



1 on a sidewalk, trespassing, driving with a broken taillight, or failing to signal when changing  
2 lanes. The goal is to use the stop as a basis for investigating the possibility of more serious  
3 crimes—such as drug trafficking or possession of a firearm—for which the officer has little or no  
4 articulable suspicion. Similarly, officers walk up and down the aisles of buses and ask to search  
5 some passengers' persons or luggage, again with little or no articulable suspicion.

6         There are a number of concerns with using officer-initiated encounters in this manner. All  
7 officer-initiated encounters impose some costs on the person stopped. At a minimum, the  
8 encounter takes up time, and can result in missed appointments and obligations. Individuals may  
9 experience the stops as frightening or intrusive. Any time an officer initiates an encounter with a  
10 member of the public, there also is some risk that the encounter could escalate and put both the  
11 officer and individual at risk of harm. Stops and arrests also can result in complaints against  
12 officers, as well as litigation against the department, particularly when they are conducted in the  
13 absence of individualized suspicion or are deployed in racially biased ways.

14         There are costs to public safety and the legitimacy of law-enforcement agencies as well.  
15 When officers stop or approach individuals on the basis of little or no suspicion, there is a much  
16 greater likelihood that the individual stopped will be innocent of any crime or violation.  
17 Individuals who are stopped may question the officers' motives for stopping them, and may  
18 conclude that they were singled out unfairly. Numerous studies have found that individuals who  
19 are stopped and questioned by police—particularly if they are stopped frequently—are less likely  
20 to report crimes or otherwise cooperate with the police. In the aggregate, communities in which  
21 such stops are frequent may come to view these enforcement practices as evidence of  
22 institutionalized mistrust, which itself can undermine the legitimacy of the police and reduce  
23 residents' willingness to cooperate with law enforcement, to the detriment of overall public  
24 safety.

25         Similar concerns are present when officers take steps to enforce minor offenses that are  
26 committed frequently by many citizens but largely ignored. Studies suggest that individuals  
27 routinely distinguish between legality and legitimacy. Individuals who are stopped or arrested  
28 may recognize that they are in fact guilty of violating a law, but nevertheless question the  
29 legitimacy of the officers' actions—particularly if certain offenses are enforced more  
30 aggressively in some neighborhoods than in others.

1           Finally, there have been serious concerns expressed regarding the practice of conducting  
2 stops in order to check for outstanding warrants. In some jurisdictions, officers stop thousands of  
3 pedestrians and motorists each year for this reason. If a warrant is found—even for a minor  
4 offense, such as an unpaid traffic ticket—the officer can then make an arrest and conduct a more  
5 extensive search. Such stops often are justified based on suspicion of minor infractions, or may  
6 be lacking in justification entirely. Experience in jurisdictions across the United States makes  
7 clear that such pretextual use of traffic and pedestrian stops can significantly undermine  
8 perceptions of police legitimacy. And, as discussed above, they also can result in unnecessary  
9 intrusions on individual liberty, and may put both officers and members of the public at greater  
10 risk of injury. In developing policies and practices to limit the use of investigative encounters  
11 generally, agencies should consider adopting specific limitations either on the conduct of stops  
12 for the purposes of identifying outstanding warrants, or on the conduct of warrant checks  
13 themselves. As discussed in § 2.XX (forthcoming Section on warrants), agencies also should  
14 consider revisiting existing warrant practices which, in some places, have resulted in there being  
15 more outstanding warrants than residents in the area.

16           Some have credited the use of these sorts of aggressive enforcement strategies with  
17 bringing down crime. Some studies suggest that making large numbers of stops in a particular  
18 area may have short-term effects on crime rates. But other studies suggest that situational  
19 approaches—like addressing littering or abandoned lots—contribute more to crime reduction in  
20 hotspots than proactive enforcement efforts do. Even if the evidence in favor of such efforts was  
21 stronger, using stops in this manner could raise safety and legitimacy concerns. Stops that fail to  
22 turn up evidence or contraband may not be a good use of officer time, yet still can increase the  
23 potential for violent conflict between officers and members of the public. Frequent use of stops  
24 and arrests for minor offenses may pull individuals into the criminal-justice system needlessly—  
25 at great cost both to the individuals and to others in the community. See also § 1.03. And to the  
26 extent that use of stops reduces residents’ willingness to cooperate and exacerbates police–  
27 community tensions, it may make it more difficult for the department to do its job.

28           *b. When and how encounters should be conducted.* To address these concerns, agencies  
29 should, at a minimum, limit the frequency with which encounters take place. When encounters  
30 do take place, agencies should adopt policies to ensure that officers treat individuals in a

1 procedurally just way so as to minimize harm to individuals stopped, consistent with the  
2 principles outlined above.

3 First, agencies should limit the overall use of initial encounters, stops, and arrests to  
4 circumstances in which they directly promote public safety and minimize harm to the public. See  
5 also § 1.03. Arrests should not occur unless necessary to protect public safety or ensure  
6 appearance in court. And agencies should minimize the use of stops based on vague, non-  
7 individualized factors or broad demographic categories. For example, studies suggest that when  
8 officers focus on behavioral cues—such as conduct indicative of criminal activity—as opposed  
9 to nonbehavioral cues—such as an individual’s location or manner of dress—they are more  
10 likely to be correct in their suspicions regarding the target’s participation in criminal activity.  
11 Agencies also should avoid using stops as a pretext to investigate potential crimes that are  
12 unrelated to the basis for the stop. And agencies should, in partnership with their communities,  
13 decide under what circumstances enforcement of low-level offenses is consistent with the  
14 agencies’ public-safety goals. To the extent that particular offenses are deemed a priority, they  
15 should be enforced evenhandedly throughout a jurisdiction.

16 Second, agencies should ensure that once an officer decides to initiate an encounter or  
17 engage in an arrest, the officer uses the encounter as an opportunity to reinforce, rather than  
18 undermine, the legitimacy of the police. Officers can do this by engaging the principles of  
19 procedural justice—treating individuals respectfully, with dignity, and, to the extent possible,  
20 explaining their reasons for initiating an encounter or taking a particular enforcement action.  
21 Officers also should give individuals an opportunity to exercise “voice” during encounters, and  
22 generally should convey trustworthy motives. Officers should abide by these principles  
23 throughout the entire encounter, including as individuals are brought to the police station and  
24 decisions are made about the possession of their property.

25 *c. Policies, recordkeeping, and supervision.* Agencies should develop policies and  
26 enforcement priorities that are consistent with these Principles. Agencies should not impose  
27 minimum quotas for officer-initiated encounters, and should not evaluate officers based on the  
28 number of stops, citations, or arrests that they conduct. In particular, agencies must never impose  
29 quotas to generate revenue. As discussed in greater detail in § 13.XX, agencies should instead  
30 evaluate officers’ conduct in ways that encourage them to work cooperatively with members of  
31 their communities and address their public-safety needs. Finally, agencies should work with

1 other government officials and community members to develop alternative strategies for dealing  
2 with public-safety concerns.

3 In addition, agencies should develop policies and practices to monitor and learn from the  
4 ways in which officers interact with members of the public. Many agencies have instituted data-  
5 collection programs to track stops, searches, and arrests. Doing so enables agencies to assess  
6 whether officers' actions are effective and conducted in an unbiased manner. Requiring officers  
7 to record what actions they took—and importantly, why—also can encourage officers to reflect  
8 on their own decisions and to consider whether their actions are in fact consistent with  
9 department values and priorities. Other agencies have used body-worn-camera footage to assess  
10 whether officers are conducting themselves appropriately in the course of encounters. Video  
11 footage also can be useful for training purposes by giving officers clear examples of what is  
12 expected of them. Body cameras also can be used as an encounter occurs, or beforehand, for  
13 officers to articulate the reason for initiating an encounter. When body cameras are not available,  
14 contemporaneous stop reports are essential.

### REPORTERS' NOTES

15 This Section draws the distinction between officers' lawful authority to initiate  
16 encounters, which often involves considerable discretion, and the manner in which that  
17 discretion should be used. In particular, it addresses the use of encounters in circumstances in  
18 which the encounters are not immediately necessary to address ongoing or imminent public-  
19 safety risks. As prior notes underscore, some departments have adopted the tactic of using wide-  
20 scale, nonconsensual encounters in an effort to fight crime. Although there is some evidence that  
21 this "proactive" use of encounters can help reduce crime, there also is mounting evidence about  
22 the costs that use of these tactics can impose. See NATIONAL ACADEMIES OF SCIENCES,  
23 ENGINEERING, AND MEDICINE, PROACTIVE POLICING: EFFECTS ON CRIME AND COMMUNITIES 177-  
24 206 (2018) (hereinafter NATIONAL ACADEMIES REPORT).

25 Those who favor aggressive use of traffic and pedestrian stops justify their use in one of  
26 two ways. First, they argue that proactive stops enable officers to uncover illegal guns and drugs.  
27 Second, they point out that stopping large numbers of people can have a deterrent effect by  
28 sending a message that criminal conduct will not be tolerated, and that individuals should leave  
29 their contraband and weapons at home. See, e.g., EDWIN MEESE III & JOHN G. MALCOLM,  
30 POLICING IN AMERICA: LESSONS FROM THE PAST, OPPORTUNITIES FOR THE FUTURE (2017);  
31 Michael R. Bloomberg, *'Stop and frisk' keeps New York safe*, WASHINGTON POST, Aug. 18,  
32 2013. The first has not been borne out by the evidence. Study after study indicates that in  
33 situations in which proactive stops are utilized, hit rates tend to be quite low. See, e.g., Expert  
34 Report of Jeffrey Fagan at 63; *Floyd v. City of New York*, No. 08 Civ. 1034 (S.D.N.Y. 2008)

1 (0.15 percent of stops in New York City resulted in seizure of a gun, and 1.75 percent in seizure  
2 of contraband); ACLU of Massachusetts, “Stop and Frisk Report Summary” (2014) (finding that  
3 just 2.5 percent of stops turned up weapons or contraband). As for the deterrent claim, the  
4 evidence is mixed. A small number of studies suggest that proactive use of stops and arrests in  
5 cities like New York has had a modest effect on crime. See, e.g., David Weisburd et al., *Do Stop,*  
6 *Question, and Frisk Practices Deter Crime?* 15 CRIMINOLOGY & PUB. POL. 31 (2016). But that  
7 evidence is contested. See, e.g., Richard Rosenfeld & Robert Fornango, *The Impact of Police*  
8 *Stops on Precinct Robbery and Burglary Rates in New York City, 2003-2010*, 31 JUSTICE  
9 QUARTERLY 96 (2014) (finding few effects). In addition, studies comparing the use of proactive  
10 stops and arrests to use of more holistic problem-solving tactics have found that the latter is more  
11 effective at bringing down crime. See Anthony A. Braga, *The Effects of Hot Spots Policing on*  
12 *Crime*, 31 JUSTICE QUARTERLY 633 (2014).

13 In 2018, the National Academy of Sciences issued a comprehensive report that examined  
14 available evidence regarding the efficacy of various proactive enforcement strategies, including  
15 the use of traffic and pedestrian stops. NATIONAL ACADEMIES REPORT. It found evidence to  
16 suggest that stop-and-frisk programs may help reduce crime when used in a targeted fashion in  
17 crime hotspots. *Id.* at 149. However, the Report cautioned that these outcomes “are generally  
18 observed only in the short term” (less than a year), and that there is little evidence about the  
19 extent to which these and other “proactive” approaches “will have crime prevention benefits at  
20 the larger jurisdictional level.” *Id.* at 5. The Report also stressed that “aggressive, misdemeanor  
21 arrest-based approaches to control disorder generate small to null impacts on crime.” *Id.* at 8.

22 Importantly, any purported gains to public safety must be weighed against the potential  
23 costs that use of these tactics can impose. Using stops in this manner can expose agencies and  
24 officers to lawsuits and complaints. The U.S. Constitution is clear that officers must have  
25 reasonable, articulable suspicion of criminal activity to justify a stop. When agencies encourage  
26 officers to make widespread use of stops based on vague, generalized criteria, there is a strong  
27 likelihood that a substantial number of stops will fall short of this constitutional threshold. See,  
28 e.g., U.S. DEPT. OF JUSTICE, INVESTIGATION OF THE NEWARK POLICE DEPARTMENT 8 (2014)  
29 (hereinafter NEWARK DOJ REPORT) (finding that 93 percent of stops reported by Newark officers  
30 lacked reasonable suspicion). Major cities across the country—including New York, Boston,  
31 Philadelphia, Milwaukee, and Newark—have faced lawsuits over aggressive use of traffic and  
32 pedestrian stops based on insufficient cause and in a manner that disproportionately targets  
33 people of color. At the height of “stop and frisk” in New York, these encounters accounted for  
34 one-third of all complaints against officers. NEW YORK CIVILIAN REVIEW BOARD, JANUARY TO  
35 JUNE 2011 REPORT 6 (2011). In many cities, the proactive use of police stops resulted in  
36 litigation, which typically ended either with a judgment against the city or a consent decree. See,  
37 e.g., Floyd, *supra*; ACLU of Illinois, *Stop and Frisk*, [https://www.aclu-il.org/en/campaigns/stop-](https://www.aclu-il.org/en/campaigns/stop-and-frisk)  
38 [and-frisk](https://www.aclu-il.org/en/campaigns/stop-and-frisk) (last visited July 6, 2018) (describing settlement agreement); Bailey et al. v. City of  
39 Philadelphia et al., C.A. No. 10-5952, Settlement Agreement, available at [https://www.aclupa.](https://www.aclupa.org/download_file/view_inline/744/198)  
40 [org/download\\_file/view\\_inline/744/198](https://www.aclupa.org/download_file/view_inline/744/198) (last visited July 6, 2018).

1           In addition, numerous studies and reports—as well as plentiful evidence in the public  
2 sphere—make clear that proactive use of stops can significantly impact police legitimacy and  
3 public trust. See, e.g., Tom R. Tyler, Jeffrey Fagan & Amanda Geller, *Street Stops and Police*  
4 *Legitimacy: Teachable Moments in Young Urban Men’s Legal Socialization* 11 J. EMPIRICAL  
5 LEGAL STUD. 751-785 (2014); Jennifer Fratello, Andrés F. Rengifo & Jennifer Trone, Vera  
6 Institute of Justice, *Coming of Age with Stop and Frisk: Experiences, Self-Perceptions, and*  
7 *Public Safety Implications* (2013); CHARLES EPP, ET AL., *PULLED OVER: HOW TRAFFIC STOPS*  
8 *DEFINE RACE AND CITIZENSHIP* 126-133 (2014). Widespread use of “stop and frisk” has led to  
9 countless protests in cities across the country. See, e.g., John Leland & Colin Moynihan,  
10 *Thousands March Silently to Protest Stop-and-Frisk Policies*, NEW YORK TIMES, June 17, 2012.  
11 Justice Department investigations in cities like Chicago and Newark have pointed to deep-seated  
12 frustration on the part of residents, primarily persons of color, who report being stopped  
13 repeatedly in their communities. NEWARK DOJ REPORT at 11; U.S. DEPT. OF JUSTICE,  
14 *INVESTIGATION OF THE CHICAGO POLICE DEPARTMENT* 142 (2014). Indeed, criticism of such  
15 tactics stretches at least as far back as the 1960s, when two presidential commissions pointed to  
16 aggressive policing in minority communities as one of the root causes of hostility and mistrust.  
17 See *The Kerner Report: The 1968 Report of the National Advisory Commission on Civil*  
18 *Disorders* (1968); *The Challenge of Crime in a Free Society: A Report by the President’s*  
19 *Commission on Law Enforcement and Administration of Justice* (1967). Although agencies may  
20 have initiated proactive enforcement programs with all good intentions, the fact of the matter is  
21 that their overuse has alienated communities, lessened public trust in the police, and led to  
22 considerable social unrest.

23           Thus, this Section encourages agencies to adopt practices and policies to limit the use of  
24 police encounters to those that promote public safety without undermining public trust. Agencies  
25 can do this in a number of ways. A number of agencies have adopted enforcement strategies that  
26 deemphasize high-volume use of stops and arrest, and focus instead on problem solving and  
27 targeted deterrence. See, e.g., New York City Police Department, “Tackling Crime, Disorder,  
28 and Fear: A New Policing Model,” available at [https://www1.nyc.gov/html/nypd/html/home/](https://www1.nyc.gov/html/nypd/html/home/POA/pdf/Tackling_Crime.pdf)  
29 [POA/pdf/Tackling\\_Crime.pdf](https://www1.nyc.gov/html/nypd/html/home/POA/pdf/Tackling_Crime.pdf). And they have reinforced through policy and training the fact that  
30 certain tactics, even if lawful, can potentially undermine community trust. See, e.g., AUSTIN  
31 POLICE DEPARTMENT, *POLICY MANUAL* § 306.5 (reminding officers that “overuse of the consent  
32 search can negatively impact the Department’s relationship with our community.”) Finally, states  
33 and individual agencies have adopted stop-data-collection programs to monitor officer use of  
34 encounters to ensure that officers act in a manner that is consistent with department values and  
35 priorities. See, e.g., CAL. GOV. CODE § 12525.5 (requiring law-enforcement agencies to gather  
36 and report on traffic-stop and pedestrian-stop data); 625 ILL. COMP. STAT. ANN. 5/11-212 (same);  
37 CONN. GEN. STAT. § 54-1m (requiring collection of motor-vehicle-stop data).

38           Among the policies that agencies should specifically consider are policies to limit or  
39 prohibit the use of stops for the purpose of conducting a warrant check. There are—as countless  
40 studies have documented—an extraordinary number of outstanding warrants in the United States.

1 See *Strieff*, 136 S. Ct. at 2073 (Kagan, J., dissenting) (citing studies). In Ferguson, Missouri, a  
2 town with just 21,000 residents, the U.S. Department of Justice found that there were 16,000  
3 outstanding warrants. DEPT. OF JUSTICE, CIVIL RIGHTS DIV., INVESTIGATION OF THE FERGUSON  
4 POLICE DEPARTMENT 55 (2015) (hereinafter FERGUSON REPORT). In Cincinnati, a study found  
5 that the city had 100,000 warrants with only 300,000 residents. See Helland & Tabarrok, *The*  
6 *Fugitive: Evidence on Public Versus Private Law Enforcement from Bail Jumping*, 47 J. LAW &  
7 ECON. 93, 98 (2004) Some of these warrants may be years—or even decades—old. See, e.g.,  
8 Preeti Chauhan et al., *The Summons Report: Trends in Issuance and Disposition of Summonses*  
9 *in New York City, 2003–2014* (2015), [https://www.jjay.cuny.edu/sites/default/files/news/](https://www.jjay.cuny.edu/sites/default/files/news/Summons_Report_DRAFT_4_24_2015_v8.pdf)  
10 [Summons\\_Report\\_DRAFT\\_4\\_24\\_2015\\_v8.pdf](https://www.jjay.cuny.edu/sites/default/files/news/Summons_Report_DRAFT_4_24_2015_v8.pdf) (finding that more than 73,000 of the warrants  
11 stemming from summonses issued in 2003 were still open as of 2014).

12 The proliferation of warrants creates an incentive for officers to conduct stops in order to  
13 look for outstanding warrants—and then, if a warrant is found, to conduct a full-blown search to  
14 look for weapons or contraband. Indeed, some police manuals encourage officers to run warrant  
15 checks during all stops precisely because it could give rise to a reason to search. See EPP ET AL.,  
16 PULLED OVER at 33-36 (2014). In some jurisdictions, officers conduct thousands of stops and  
17 warrant checks each year. The use of stops in this manner raises all of the concerns about  
18 legitimacy and intrusiveness discussed above. It also potentially helps to perpetuate the system of  
19 fines and fees that falls disproportionately on the poor and on racial minorities. See, e.g.,  
20 FERGUSON REPORT at 42-61. For all of these reasons, agencies should consider policies to limit  
21 the use of stops for the purpose of conducting a warrant check. Jurisdictions also should,  
22 consistent with § 2.XX (forthcoming Section on warrants), revisit existing warrant practices to  
23 minimize the various harms that the proliferation of warrants has caused.

24 Finally, the expanding literature on procedural justice—not to mention common sense—  
25 makes clear that the manner in which an officer conducts an encounter can shape how the  
26 encounter is perceived. See TOM R. TYLER & YUEN J. HUO, TRUST IN THE LAW: ENCOURAGING  
27 COOPERATION WITH THE POLICE AND THE LAW 53 (2002); Tracey L. Meares & Peter Neyroud,  
28 *Rightful Policing*, NAT’L INST. OF JUSTICE (2015); Stephen J. Schulhofer et al., *American*  
29 *Policing at a Crossroads: Unsustainable Policies and the Procedural Justice Alternative*, 101 J.  
30 CRIM. L. & CRIMINOLOGY 335, 344-345 (2011). By treating people respectfully, explaining the  
31 basis for the stop and encounter, and giving people voice, officers can use the stops that  
32 necessarily will occur to promote the legitimacy of policing and enhance the agency’s mission.  
33 Section 1.06 talks about procedural justice in policing and accumulates the evidence in its  
34 support. A number of agencies have adopted this approach, training officers that every encounter  
35 is an opportunity to promote the community’s trust in the police and elicit its cooperation in  
36 promoting public safety. Wesley G. Skogan, Maarten Van Craen & Cari Hennessy, *Training*  
37 *Police for Procedural Justice*, 11 J. EXP. CRIMINOLOGY 319 (2014) (evaluating effectiveness of  
38 Chicago’s training program).

**§ 4.04. Permissible Intrusions During Stops****(a) During a stop, an officer may:**

**(1) request identification and make other inquiries as necessary to investigate the crimes or violations for which the officer has reasonable suspicion, or as necessary to ensure officer safety; and**

**(2) conduct a frisk of a person, or a protective sweep of the passenger compartment of a vehicle, based on reasonable suspicion to believe that the person is armed and dangerous.**

**(b) Unless probable cause develops during the encounter, the encounter should terminate upon completion of these investigative efforts.**

**Comment:**

*a. Generally.* Once an officer detains a person, the officer is permitted to take certain additional steps either to confirm or dispel the officer's suspicions, or to ensure the officer's safety. Some actions, such as seeking identification or asking questions, do not require any additional cause. Other actions, such as a protective frisk, require additional justification beyond the reason for the stop itself—specifically, that the officer have reasonable suspicion to believe that the individual is armed and dangerous.

The concern in both instances is that absent proper limits—including those addressed by other Sections in this Chapter—those secondary intrusions may themselves become the goal of the stop, leading to unnecessary and perhaps unnecessarily intrusive encounters between officers and the public. This Section addresses that concern in two ways. First, it makes clear that encounters must be limited in scope and duration to that which is necessary to resolve the officer's suspicions regarding the particular offense in question, or to ensure the officer's safety. This discourages officers from turning routine traffic and pedestrian stops into fishing expeditions on the off chance that officers may stumble on incriminating evidence of an unrelated offense. Second, it reinforces the Fourth Amendment rule that the only permissible justification for a protective frisk is an officer's reasonable, articulable belief that the individual stopped is armed and dangerous.

*b. Protective sweep of a vehicle.* An officer may conduct a protective sweep of the passenger compartment of a vehicle based on reasonable suspicion that the driver or passengers are armed and dangerous. The sweep must be limited to those areas that could contain a weapon



1 and are immediately accessible to the driver or passenger—or would be once the driver or  
2 passenger are permitted to reenter the vehicle.

### REPORTERS' NOTES

3 For the most part, this Section adheres to existing U.S. Supreme Court precedent, both  
4 about what authority officers possess when they conduct stops, and what authority they do not.  
5 In particular, it allows a request for identification during a stop, *Hiibel v. Sixth Judicial District*,  
6 542 U.S. 177 (2004), so long as there is reasonable suspicion for the stop in the first place. And it  
7 permits a frisk of the outer clothing of a person if the officer can articulate a threat to his or her  
8 safety or the safety of others, *Terry v. Ohio*, 392 U.S. 1 (1968). It similarly permits a protective  
9 sweep of the passenger compartment of a vehicle based on reasonable suspicion that the vehicle  
10 contains a weapon that would be immediately accessible to the driver or passenger. *Michigan v.*  
11 *Long*, 463 U.S. 1032 (1983). It also makes clear, consistent with *Rodriguez v. United States*, 135  
12 S. Ct. 1609 (2015), that a stop may not be longer than necessary to accomplish the purpose of the  
13 stop.

#### 14 § 4.05. Minimizing Intrusiveness of Stops and Arrests

15 **(a) An officer should make an arrest or issue a citation only when doing so directly**  
16 **advances the goal of public safety. When authorized under governing law, an officer should**  
17 **issue a citation in lieu of a custodial arrest, or a warning in lieu of a citation, unless the**  
18 **situation cannot be effectively resolved using the less intrusive means.**

19 **(b) In conducting a stop or arrest, officers should minimize undue intrusions on the**  
20 **liberty, time, and bodily integrity of the person stopped.**

21 **(c) Legislatures and agencies should promote the use of less intrusive sanctions, and**  
22 **should consider restricting the use of arrests for certain categories of offenses.**

#### 23 **Comment:**

24 *a. Summonses and arrests.* Officers possess the power of arrest in order to further a  
25 number of societal goals: to maintain public order, initiate the criminal process against a  
26 defendant, facilitate the preservation of evidence, and help to ensure an individual's appearance  
27 at later proceedings. At the same time, an arrest can impose a variety of costs. An arrest involves  
28 a serious—even if temporary—deprivation of liberty, which can be frightening and humiliating,  
29 and can disrupt an individual's ability to fulfill family or work obligations. As a result of arrest,  
30 an individual may face significant fines and fees, loss of public housing, loss of a job,

1 deportation, and child-custody consequences. These in turn can have serious ripple effects on the  
2 individual's family and community. Studies show that once a person is taken into custody, and  
3 held there, the possibility of eventual incarceration increases. Any time an officer decides to  
4 make an arrest, there is some risk that the officer will encounter physical resistance that may  
5 necessitate the use of force—which can result in injury to both the officer and the civilian  
6 involved. Finally, arrests are expensive: an arrest typically takes an officer off the street for  
7 several hours, and imposes various other processing and administrative costs on agencies and  
8 courts.

9 In some circumstances, an arrest may be the most appropriate—and perhaps the only—  
10 way to achieve the aforementioned objectives. But in many instances, these same goals may be  
11 achieved in other ways. Officers often have options available to them other than arrest. For many  
12 defendants, a summons may be just as effective at ensuring their appearance in court. In some  
13 cases, a warning or other intervention may be sufficient to resolve the situation and deter future  
14 crimes or violations. In those situations, an arrest constitutes an unnecessary intrusion on  
15 individual liberty, and should be avoided. That is particularly true for individuals who are  
16 suspected of offenses for which the maximum penalty is a fine.

17 Finally, although a summons or a citation may be preferable to an arrest in many  
18 circumstances, it is important to note that these lesser sanctions can impose significant costs as  
19 well. For many individuals, having to pay even a small fine may mean forgoing other necessities  
20 such as food, electricity, or medical care. Some may simply be unable to pay. In some  
21 jurisdictions, individuals who cannot pay their fines and fees may face jail time or other  
22 consequences, such as loss of a driver's license. Much like an arrest, a criminal summons or a  
23 citation also may result in a criminal record, which can affect an individual's eligibility for  
24 employment or occupational licenses, loans, and public benefits. An additional concern with  
25 summonses and citations is that jurisdictions may come to see them as a revenue-generating  
26 mechanism. This can skew incentives and result in policies that encourage officers to issue  
27 summonses or citations in circumstances in which doing so does not in fact promote public  
28 safety, and instead imposes substantial burdens on communities that often are least able to bear  
29 them.

30 For all of these reasons, agencies should encourage officers to consider using lesser  
31 sanctions when doing so is consistent with the needs of public safety and permissible under

1 governing law. Agencies should not impose minimum quotas or targets for citations or arrests, or  
2 evaluate officers based on the quantity as opposed to quality of enforcement actions taken. In  
3 addition, states and municipalities should revisit policies that incentivize agencies to issue  
4 citations in order to raise revenues either for the agency or for the municipality as a whole. Such  
5 policies often impose disproportionate burdens on low-income and minority communities and  
6 should be discontinued.

7 *b. Minimizing the intrusiveness of encounters.* All enforcement actions taken by the  
8 police represent a notable intrusion into individual liberty. They can cause considerable anxiety,  
9 discomfort, and disruption. There are a number of steps that officers should take—and agencies  
10 can encourage through policies and training—to limit the overall intrusiveness of encounters. To  
11 the extent practicable, officers should limit the duration of stops and noncustodial arrests, as well  
12 as the time that arrested persons spend in police custody. Officers also should avoid the  
13 unnecessary use of handcuffs and other restraints, particularly when dealing with juveniles and  
14 other vulnerable populations. And officers should take steps to minimize the intrusiveness of  
15 searches—by limiting the scope of a search to what is necessary to maintain officer safety or  
16 recover evidence, by ensuring whenever practicable that individuals are searched by an officer of  
17 the same gender, and by limiting the use of strip searches and other similarly invasive tactics.

18 *c. Need for legislative and agency policy on citations and arrests.* Agencies should  
19 provide officers with clear guidance on how the discretion to arrest should be used. Agencies  
20 typically are in a much better position to consider the costs and benefits of arrests in various  
21 circumstances, and to partner with other agencies and civic organizations in developing  
22 alternatives.

23 Many states, municipalities, and agencies already have adopted various policies and  
24 programs to encourage the use of lesser sanctions and to restrict the use of arrests. Most states  
25 permit officers to issue a summons or a citation in lieu of arrest for low-level offenses. Some  
26 require officers to issue a summons or a citation in lieu of an arrest for certain offenses unless an  
27 arrest is necessary to preserve the peace, or there is some reason to believe that the individual  
28 will fail to appear at later criminal proceedings. A number of jurisdictions have provided officers  
29 with alternative mechanisms for addressing disruptive or disorderly conduct that otherwise  
30 would necessitate arrest. These include crisis drop-off centers for the mentally ill, detox centers  
31 for individuals under the influence of drugs or alcohol, and homeless shelters where officers can

1 take individuals who are in need of services and support. Jurisdictions also have taken steps to  
2 reduce reliance on formal sanctions for juvenile misconduct, which often can better be addressed  
3 through school discipline, counseling, or other services.

4 *d. Mandatory arrest policies.* In many jurisdictions, officers are required either as a  
5 matter of department policy or state law to make an arrest in certain circumstances—typically in  
6 cases that involve domestic violence. The goal of these provisions is to protect victims by  
7 ensuring that officers take claims of abuse seriously, and that the alleged perpetrator is removed  
8 from the area and unable to cause further injury. Limiting officer discretion in these cases also  
9 reduces the risk that officers will take some claims of abuse more seriously than others based on  
10 factors that are unrelated to the severity of the harm imposed. Increasingly, however,  
11 practitioners and scholars have come to doubt that mandatory-arrest policies are in fact an  
12 effective means of achieving these objectives. In particular, studies suggest that mandatory-arrest  
13 policies may discourage victims from calling the police for fear of the collateral consequences of  
14 an arrest on the suspect and family. These findings suggest that, at the very least, jurisdictions  
15 should continue to assess whether the policies have had their intended effects, and whether these  
16 same goals might be achieved in ways that minimize some of the attendant harms. Whatever the  
17 benefits of these arrests, they are, like other arrests, costly to the individuals arrested and to their  
18 communities, and should be justified by clear public-safety needs.

## REPORTERS' NOTES

19 Certain enforcement actions are simply part of what police officers do, and what we  
20 expect them to do. A number of offenders will need to be arrested. In the course of conducting  
21 arrests, searches will be required. Acting in lieu of arrest, officers will issue summonses.

22 Although these actions are at times necessary, and are certainly familiar, this Section  
23 recognizes that all actions that law-enforcement officers take during the course of an encounter  
24 impose *some* costs, which officers should strive to minimize to the extent possible. Handcuffs  
25 limit an individual's ability to move, and can be painful and humiliating. All searches, however  
26 brief, subject individuals to unwanted contact with strangers. The costs associated with these  
27 actions can be exacerbated if undertaken in a manner that accounts insufficiently for the  
28 individual's dignity. For example, searches and frisks of an individual's person are more  
29 intrusive when conducted by an officer of the opposite gender, or when conducted in public  
30 view.

31 An arrest in particular constitutes a serious intrusion on an individual's liberty and  
32 imposes any number of additional harms, from dignitary costs to threats to one's livelihood. See,

1 e.g., Amanda Gellar et al., *Aggressive Policing and the Mental Health of Young Urban Men*, 24  
2 AM. J. PUB. HEALTH 231, 232 (2014). This is true even if the individual is detained only briefly  
3 and ultimately is not charged. See Gary Fields & John R. Emshwiller, *As Arrest Records Rise,*  
4 *Americans Find Consequences Can Last a Lifetime*, WALL ST. J. (Aug. 18, 2014, 10:30 PM),  
5 [www.wsj.com/articles/as-arrest-records-rise-americans-find-consequences-can-last-a-lifetime-](http://www.wsj.com/articles/as-arrest-records-rise-americans-find-consequences-can-last-a-lifetime-1408415402)  
6 [1408415402](http://www.wsj.com/articles/as-arrest-records-rise-americans-find-consequences-can-last-a-lifetime-1408415402). An arrest may lead to loss of employment, eviction from public housing, or even  
7 loss of custody of one's children. See, e.g., Eisha Jain, *Arrests as Regulation*, 67 STAN. L. REV.  
8 809, 826-833 (2015); 24 C.F.R. § 966.4(l)(5)(iii)(A) (2016). It can have immigration  
9 consequences as well. See Jain, *supra*. Arrests increase the likelihood of pretrial detention and  
10 conviction, as well as longer prison sentences. See Christopher T. Lowenkamp et al., Laura &  
11 John Arnold Found., *Investigating the Impact of Pretrial Detention on Sentencing Outcomes*  
12 (2013), <https://perma.cc/8DLL-FJ35>; Mary T. Phillips, New York City Criminal Justice Agency,  
13 *Pretrial Detention and Case Outcomes, Part I: Nonfelony Cases* 26, 30, 35, 40 (2007). The  
14 consequences of arrest may spill well beyond arrestees themselves and affect parents, spouses,  
15 children, and the communities to which they belong.

16 Arrests may be costly for officers and agencies as well. Arrests are dangerous. An arrest  
17 may provoke a violent response, risking the physical safety of officers, bystanders, and the  
18 individual in question. See Cynthia Lum & George Fachner, Int'l Ass'n of Chiefs of Police,  
19 *Police Pursuits in an Age of Innovation and Reform: The IACP Police Pursuit Database* 7  
20 (2008), <https://perma.cc/XZ96-NPDD> (finding that one of the most common circumstances of  
21 officer death, second only to an automobile accident, is an arrest situation). Arrests also are  
22 expensive: studies estimate that each arrest costs departments several thousands of dollars and  
23 takes officers off the street for hours. See Rachel A. Harmon, *Why Arrest?*, 115 MICH. L. REV.  
24 307, 319 (2016) (noting that an arrest takes an officer off the street for between four and 13.5  
25 hours).

26 Although fines (and accompanying fees) sometimes are available as an alternative to  
27 arrest, these sanctions themselves are not costless. Individuals may not have enough money to  
28 pay the fines, and may face consequences similar to those that result from arrest. In some  
29 jurisdictions, for example, individuals who cannot pay fines face jail time. See, e.g., ARIZ. REV.  
30 STAT. ANN. § 13-810 (2017); MO. REV. STAT. § 558.006 (2016). In others, they can be stripped  
31 of their driver's licenses, severely limiting their ability to work. See VA. CODE ANN. § 46.2-395;  
32 but see *Thomas v. Haslam*, 329 F. Supp. 3d 475 (M.D. Tenn. 2018) (holding that a Tennessee  
33 law that permits the state to revoke an individual's driver's license for failure to pay court costs  
34 is unconstitutional as applied to indigent defendants). Even if an individual can pay, the money  
35 spent on the fine is money not available for other necessities like rent, food, utilities, or medical  
36 care. Criminal summonses and citations also may create a criminal record and trigger many of  
37 the collateral consequences associated with arrests.

38 Any rational system of criminal justice would take those costs into account. The proper  
39 approach, outlined in this Section, is one of minimization. See Rachel A. Harmon, *Why Arrest?*,  
40 115 MICH. L. REV. 307, 362-363 (2016). Stated simply, policing agencies and officers ought to

1 pursue legitimate public-safety purposes using the least intrusive means available, so long as  
2 their actions are within the bounds of governing law. If a less intrusive means would accomplish  
3 the public purpose equally well, the officer should not use the more intrusive tactic.

#### 4 § 4.06. Consent Searches

5 **(a) During any encounter, an officer may ask for permission to search a person or a**  
6 **person’s property.**

7 **(b) Agencies should consider adopting policies to limit officers’ use of consent**  
8 **searches, including by:**

9 **(1) prohibiting officers from seeking consent to search absent reasonable**  
10 **suspicion to believe that the search will turn up evidence of a crime or violation;**

11 **(2) requiring officers to explain why they want to conduct a search and that**  
12 **the individual has the right to refuse consent; and**

13 **(3) requiring officers to obtain and document, either in writing or in some**  
14 **other reliable form such as body-worn-camera video, acknowledgement that consent**  
15 **was sought and provided.**

16 **(c) The scope of a consent search should be no broader than necessary to achieve the**  
17 **investigative objective motivating the request for consent.**

#### 18 **Comment:**

19 *a. Animating concerns.* Consent searches serve a number of important functions. Society  
20 has an interest in detecting and deterring criminal activity. If an officer lacks probable cause to  
21 justify a search, but nevertheless has reason to believe that an individual is involved in criminal  
22 activity, a consent search may be the only means of uncovering evidence or furthering the  
23 investigation. Even if an officer has probable cause to believe that a crime has been committed,  
24 and could thus obtain a warrant, the target of the search may prefer to grant the officer  
25 permission to search so as to quickly dispel the officer’s suspicion.

26 At the same time, there is a risk that consent searches may be used in ways that impose  
27 unnecessary costs on the public, and, in doing so, undermine public trust in the police. These  
28 include possible privacy and dignitary costs, among others. Individuals who consent to a search  
29 may nevertheless find the experience intrusive and unsettling. Many of the circumstances in  
30 which officers seek consent—such as traffic or pedestrian stops—are inherently coercive. Even  
31 if an individual is advised of his or her right to refuse, the individual may feel compelled to give

1 officers permission to search to avoid unduly prolonging the encounter or increasing the  
2 likelihood of getting a citation. It is therefore difficult to conclude with confidence that anyone  
3 who is asked by a police officer for permission to search “consents” in the ordinary meaning of  
4 that term. An individual who “consents” may nevertheless perceive the encounter as involuntary  
5 and illegitimate—particularly if the person is innocent of any crime. These concerns are  
6 exacerbated by the fact that consent searches have the potential to be used in racially disparate  
7 ways. In one jurisdiction after another, studies have shown that officers are more likely to seek  
8 consent from minority drivers and pedestrians—but that searches of minorities are in fact less  
9 likely to turn up evidence or contraband. These disparities can further undermine legitimacy and  
10 trust. Finally, a number of studies suggest that frequent use of consent searches may be a poor  
11 use of officer time. Hit rates often are extremely low, and even “successful” searches often turn  
12 up only small quantities of drugs.

13 In view of these concerns, a number of jurisdictions have limited the use of consent  
14 searches in various ways. Many departments and states require officers to obtain written  
15 acknowledgement of consent. Others require that officers have articulable suspicion that the  
16 search will turn up evidence or contraband before asking for permission to search. Still others  
17 require officers to obtain supervisor approval prior to conducting a search. Finally, at least one  
18 state highway patrol has banned the use of consent searches outright.

19 *b. Use of the term “consent.”* Although there are reasons to doubt whether any given  
20 search conducted with permission is in fact “consensual” in the ordinary sense of the term, these  
21 Principles nevertheless adopt the phrase “consent searches” to describe the police activity in  
22 question. The phrase is widely used throughout judicial opinions and police department manuals.  
23 Because one of the primary goals of these Principles is to provide guidance to agencies—as well  
24 as legislatures that may adopt statutes to regulate agency or officer conduct—these Principles, to  
25 the extent possible, use familiar terms to avoid the possibility of confusion and to increase the  
26 likelihood of adoption.

27 *c. Requirement of reasonable suspicion and explanation.* Officers should not seek  
28 consent to conduct a search unless they have reasonable suspicion to believe that the search will  
29 turn up evidence of a crime and unless they can explain to the individual why they would like to  
30 conduct a search. A reasonable-suspicion standard recognizes society’s interest in uncovering  
31 evidence of criminal activity, and it gives officers an important tool with which to close the

1 investigative gap between their initial suspicions and probable cause for a search or arrest. At the  
2 same time, the standard eliminates the use of consent searches in precisely the circumstances in  
3 which they are least likely to be efficacious, and most likely to undermine legitimacy and trust.  
4 Absent reasonable suspicion, an officer at best has a mere hunch that something is off—and at  
5 worst, is operating on the basis of explicit or implicit bias, unfounded hunch, whim, or caprice.  
6 Studies suggest these are precisely the circumstances in which officers’ actions are most likely to  
7 disproportionately affect minority groups. The additional requirement of an explanation can both  
8 assuage fears that the officer is acting arbitrarily and help define the scope of the consent.

9 *d. Written acknowledgement.* A reasonable-suspicion requirement is more closely tailored  
10 to the underlying concerns with consent searches than is the requirement of written  
11 acknowledgement that the target was informed that he or she did not have to consent to the  
12 search. Research casts serious doubt on the idea that consent forms meaningfully alter the  
13 inherent coerciveness of police–citizen encounters. An individual who feels compelled to  
14 consent to a search—out of deference to authority or fear of the consequences of refusing—may  
15 feel just as compelled to consent in writing.

16 “Consent” forms still can serve an important purpose: they create a record of the  
17 encounter, and thus help ensure that officers inform individuals of their right to refuse  
18 permission to search. But these same purposes can be achieved in other ways—for example, by  
19 documenting an encounter using body-worn-camera video. Indeed, body-worn-camera video  
20 may be more effective at documenting the circumstances under which an individual agrees to  
21 permit officers to search. For this reason, these Principles do not require that consent be obtained  
22 in writing if the department has mechanisms in place to document the encounter in an equally  
23 effective way.

### REPORTERS’ NOTES

24 Consent searches are a common tool for police departments. Courts repeatedly have  
25 stressed the importance of permitting officers to seek cooperation from the public, as well as the  
26 fundamental value of consent itself. As the U.S. Supreme Court observed, “[i]n a society based  
27 on law, the concept of agreement and consent should be given a weight and dignity of its own.”  
28 *United States v. Drayton*, 536 U.S. 194, 207 (2002). See also *Fernandez v. California*, 134 S. Ct.  
29 1126, 1132 (2014); *Schneekloth v. Bustamonte*, 412 U.S. 218, 243 (1973). From the perspective  
30 of police departments, seeking consent to search saves officers time by forgoing the procedural  
31 requirements of obtaining a warrant. See, e.g., Tracey Maclin, *The Good and Bad News About*  
32 *Consent Searches in the Supreme Court*, 39 MCGEORGE L. REV. 27, 31 (2008). Additionally,



1 asking for consent is sometimes the sole investigatory tool available to an officer who believes a  
2 crime has occurred. As the Court acknowledged in *Schneckloth*, “[i]n situations where the police  
3 have some evidence of illicit activity, but lack probable cause to arrest or search, a search  
4 authorized by valid consent may be the only means of obtaining important and reliable  
5 evidence.” *Schneckloth*, 412 U.S. at 227.

6 *1. Animating concerns.* Despite their legality and usefulness, various issues surrounding  
7 consent searches mitigate against their broad use. First and importantly, “consent” searches often  
8 are not voluntary in any meaningful sense. Statistics reported by police departments suggest that  
9 the vast majority of people consent to searches when asked to do so by police officers—which  
10 raises serious doubts about how voluntary these searches are. L.A. POLICE DEP’T, ARREST,  
11 DISCIPLINE, USE OF FORCE, FIELD DATA CAPTURE AND AUDIT STATISTICS AND THE CITY STATUS  
12 REPORT COVERING PERIOD OF JANUARY 1, 2006-JUNE 30, 2006, at 8 (2006) (reporting that of  
13 16,228 requests for consensual search made during the first half of 2006, 16,225, or 99.9 percent,  
14 were granted); ALEXANDER WEISS & DENNIS P. ROSENBAUM, UNIV. OF ILLINOIS AT CHICAGO,  
15 ILLINOIS TRAFFIC STOPS STATISTICS ACT 2010 ANNUAL REPORT: EXECUTIVE SUMMARY 10  
16 (2011) (reporting that in 2010, requests for consent to search during a traffic stop were granted  
17 82 percent of the time). Extensive psychological research suggests that people asked to consent  
18 often do not feel free to refuse, either because they feel required to comply with the request of an  
19 authority figure or because they fear the consequences of refusal. As Marcy Strauss writes, there  
20 is “abundant evidence” that “individuals read a police officer’s request as a demand that they  
21 will . . . most assuredly obey.” See, e.g., Marcy Strauss, *Reconstructing Consent*, 92 J. CRIM. L.  
22 & CRIMINOLOGY 211, 240-241 (2001); see also Janice Nadler, *No Need to Shout: Bus Sweeps*  
23 *and the Psychology of Coercion*, 2002 SUP. CT. REV. 153, 155; Illya D. Lichtenberg, *Voluntary*  
24 *Consent or Obedience to Authority* (Unpublished Dissertation, Rutgers University, 1999). As  
25 noted earlier in this Chapter, even the U.S. Supreme Court has recognized that consent may not  
26 be truly voluntary. *Schneckloth v. Bustamonte*, 412 U.S. at 227, 228; § 4.01, Reporters’ Notes.

27 Overreliance on consent searches can have negative effects on public perceptions of  
28 police legitimacy. In 2008, the Bureau of Justice Statistics reported that 18.4 percent of people  
29 asked to consent to a search reported the officer’s actions as both improper and disrespectful, as  
30 compared to 5.6 percent of drivers who were not subject to a consent search. In addition, 36.6  
31 percent of those asked to consent to a search said that they perceived the underlying stop to be  
32 illegitimate as a result, compared to 5.6 percent of drivers generally. Jacinta M. Gau, *Consent*  
33 *Searches as a Threat to Procedural Justice and Police Legitimacy: An Analysis of Consent*  
34 *Requests During Traffic Stops*, 24 CRIM. JUST. POL’Y REV. 752, 768 (2013).

35 There is also a significant risk that consent searches may be used in racially disparate  
36 ways. Department statistics consistently show that officers are significantly more likely to ask  
37 African American or Hispanic motorists or pedestrians for consent to search—but that searches  
38 of minorities are in fact less likely to turn up contraband. A 2014 study found that Illinois state  
39 troopers were 2.5 times more likely to ask Hispanic motorists for consent to search, but were 2.5  
40 times more likely to find contraband in searches of white motorists. ACLU of Illinois, *Racial*

1 *Disparity in Consent Searches and Dog Sniff Searches: An Analysis of Illinois Traffic Stop Data*  
2 *from 2013* (2014); see also Richard A. Oppel, Jr., *Activists Wield Search Data to Challenge and*  
3 *Change Police Policy*, N.Y. TIMES (Nov. 20, 2014) (describing similar findings of disparate  
4 impact in Durham, North Carolina, and Austin, Texas). A number of law-enforcement agencies  
5 and officials have recognized these risks. For example, the Kalamazoo, Michigan, police  
6 department revised its consent-search policy after a commissioned study found that Black  
7 motorists were stopped at a rate at least two times greater than white motorists. In explaining the  
8 need for the revisions, Chief Jeff Hadley cited the “collateral damage” to community relations  
9 caused by previous policies. Aaron Mueller, *Traffic Stops by Kalamazoo Police Down by Nearly*  
10 *Half in 6 Months Since Racial Profiling Study*, MLIVE.COM (March 3, 2014),  
11 [http://www.mlive.com/news/kalamazoo/index.ssf/2014/03/racial\\_profiling\\_study\\_prompts.html](http://www.mlive.com/news/kalamazoo/index.ssf/2014/03/racial_profiling_study_prompts.html).

12 Finally, given that consent searches often are conducted based on little or no suspicion,  
13 there is reason to doubt their effectiveness. The hit rates for consent searches generally are low.  
14 See, e.g., Illya D. Lichtenberg & Alisa Smith, *Testing the Effectiveness of Consent Searches as a*  
15 *Law Enforcement Tool*, 14 JUSTICE PROFESSIONAL 95, 102-104 (2001) (finding consent-search  
16 hit rates for detection of drugs ranging between 9.4 percent and 22.9 percent over various periods  
17 in Maryland and Ohio); REPORT OF THE NEW JERSEY SENATE JUDICIARY COMMITTEE’S  
18 INVESTIGATION OF RACIAL PROFILING AND THE NEW JERSEY STATE POLICE 86 (2001) (noting that  
19 just “37 seizures resulted from the 271 consent searches in the year 2000.”). An Ohio study  
20 found that as officers made greater use of consent searches, hit rates went down, which suggests  
21 that consent searches are most effective when officers are more discerning in deciding when to  
22 use them. Lichtenberg & Smith, *supra*.

23 2. *The limits of written consent forms.* Although a number of jurisdictions have responded  
24 to these concerns by requiring officers to obtain consent in writing, there is some reason to doubt  
25 that consent forms can fully address the concerns described here. As Nancy Leong and Kira  
26 Suyeshi note, “a signed consent form does not signify that a suspect rendered consent  
27 voluntarily. The form does little to improve a suspect’s understanding of her rights, particularly  
28 when the suspect is poorly educated, frightened, not fluent in English, or otherwise impaired in  
29 her ability to understand.” Nancy Leong & Kira Suyeshi, *Consent Forms and Consent*  
30 *Formalism*, 2013 WISC. L. REV. 751, 751 (2013). To the extent that individuals feel singled out  
31 by the request itself, a consent-to-search form is unlikely to address those concerns. Finally,  
32 there also is some risk that the presence of a signed consent form may dissuade courts from  
33 looking sufficiently closely at whether consent was in fact voluntary. *Id.*

34 3. *Requirement of reasonable suspicion.* These Principles urge agencies to limit the use  
35 of consent searches to circumstances in which they are likely to turn up evidence of crime—  
36 namely, when officers have reasonable suspicion to believe that the target of the search is  
37 involved in criminal activity. Absent reasonable suspicion to justify the search, an officer’s  
38 request to search is based on little more than a hunch. As Justice Sotomayor has argued, “[w]hen  
39 we condone officers’ use of these devices without adequate cause, we give them reason to target

1 pedestrians in an arbitrary manner.” Utah v. Strieff, 136 S. Ct. 2056, 2069 (2016) (Sotomayor, J.,  
2 dissenting).

3 Several departments across the United States already have taken this approach. See, e.g.,  
4 AUSTIN POLICE DEP’T, AUSTIN PD POLICY MANUAL 145 (2017) (“Officers should . . . only  
5 request a consent search when they have an articulable reason why they believe the search is  
6 necessary and likely to produce evidence related to an investigation.”); MILWAUKEE POLICE  
7 DEP’T, STANDARD OPERATING PROCEDURE: 085 CITIZEN CONTACTS, FIELD INTERVIEWS, SEARCH  
8 AND SEIZURE (2014) (same); Mueller, supra (noting a similar policy in Kalamazoo, Michigan). In  
9 addition, some state courts have interpreted their state constitutions to require a similar  
10 “reasonable suspicion” requirement for consent searches. See State v. Fort, 660 N.W.2d 415, 416  
11 (Minn. 2003) (“[I]n the absence of reasonable, articulable suspicion a consent-based search  
12 obtained by exploitation of a routine traffic stop that exceeds the scope of the stop’s underlying  
13 justification is invalid.”); State v. Carty, 790 A.2d 903, 905 (N.J. 2002).

14 *4. Additional precautions.* Agencies also can take additional steps to ensure that consent  
15 searches are used in a manner that is consistent with these Principles. First, agencies should  
16 ensure there is a mechanism in place to document that officers in fact sought consent to search.  
17 Written consent forms can serve this purpose, but so too can requiring officers to document  
18 consent using an audio or video recording. See, e.g., AUSTIN POLICE DEP’T, AUSTIN PD POLICY  
19 MANUAL, supra at 147 (“For consent searches not involving a vehicle or subject stop, an officer  
20 with supervisory approval may document the voluntary consent using only video and/or audio  
21 recording.”).

22 A number of agencies also have monitored the use of consent searches by requiring  
23 officers to get supervisor approval before conducting a search. NEW ORLEANS POLICE DEP’T,  
24 OPERATIONS MANUAL, CHAPTER 1.2.4 SEARCH AND SEIZURE POLICY STATEMENT 20 (2016) (“An  
25 officer shall immediately notify a supervisor when considering a search based on consent. Before  
26 an officer may conduct a consent search, the officer must have the express approval of his or her  
27 supervisor.”); AUSTIN POLICE DEP’T, AUSTIN PD POLICY MANUAL 145 (2017) (same).

## 28 § 4.07. Searches Incident to a Lawful Custodial Arrest

29 **(a) A search incident to a lawful custodial arrest may only be conducted to protect**  
30 **the safety of officers or others, or to prevent the destruction of evidence.**

31 **(b) Agencies should develop policies to ensure that searches incident to arrest are no**  
32 **broader than necessary to serve these purposes, and that they are not used as pretext to**  
33 **look for evidence of a crime or violation that is unrelated to the offense for which the**  
34 **individual was arrested.**

1           **(c) A search conducted at the time of arrest generally should be limited to a pat-**  
2 **down search of the arrestee and a search of the immediately surrounding area from which**  
3 **the arrestee could access a weapon or evidence. Agencies should limit the use of more**  
4 **intrusive searches to circumstances in which there is reasonable suspicion to believe that**  
5 **the arrestee is concealing a weapon or evidence that would not be uncovered through a pat-**  
6 **down search.**

7           **(d) An officer may conduct a more thorough search of the arrestee’s person or**  
8 **property after transport to the stationhouse or to a detention facility. Such search should**  
9 **either:**

10                   **(1) consistent with Chapter 5, be conducted pursuant to a written policy that**  
11 **specifies the scope of the search and is applied evenhandedly, see §§ 5.01-5.06; or**

12                   **(2) be based on reasonable suspicion, documented in advance, that the search**  
13 **will turn up evidence or contraband.**

14 **Comment:**

15           *a. Permissible rationales.* Searches conducted incident to arrest fall under one of the  
16 longstanding exceptions to the general rule that searches of persons or property must be  
17 conducted pursuant to a warrant supported by probable cause. Although a search incident to  
18 arrest is *triggered* by a suspicion-based action—an arrest supported by probable cause—the  
19 search itself need not be supported by any individualized suspicion that it will turn up evidence  
20 or a weapon. Thus, some of the same concerns about suspicionless searches reflected in § 5.01  
21 apply here.

22           Courts have recognized two permissible justifications for dispensing with both warrants  
23 and cause in this context: officer safety and the preservation of evidence. Taking an individual  
24 into custody exposes officers (or others present) to risk of harm, and also may increase the risk  
25 that the arrestee will attempt to destroy evidence during transport or processing. The degree of  
26 risk that a particular individual poses may not always be apparent to an officer at the time of the  
27 arrest. For this reason, courts have permitted officers to conduct a protective search absent any  
28 articulable suspicion that it is in fact necessary in that particular instance.

29           When neither of these risks is present, however, the mere fact of arrest is insufficient to  
30 justify the search. For example, courts have long held that, absent exigent circumstances, officers  
31 must obtain a warrant before searching an arrestee’s home or office beyond the immediate grab

1 area. Officers also are not permitted to search an arrestee’s vehicle absent probable cause to  
2 believe that the vehicle contains evidence related to the crime of arrest. And they are required to  
3 obtain a warrant before searching the contents of an arrestee’s cellular phone or computer.

4 *b. Potential for abuse.* Although searches incident to arrest further important law-  
5 enforcement goals, they also can be subject to abuse. Such searches require no independent,  
6 individualized justification beyond the reason for the arrest itself. Thus, the authority to search  
7 incident to arrest creates an incentive for officers to arrest individuals in circumstances in which  
8 they otherwise would have issued a warning or a citation. Officers also have been known to  
9 arrest individuals for minor offenses, search them for evidence of drugs or other contraband, and  
10 then let them go without ever taking them into custody. In such instances, the search itself  
11 becomes the goal, rather than a byproduct of an officer’s decision to take someone into custody.  
12 Those practices can unduly increase the overall incidence of arrest, as well as the collateral costs  
13 imposed on individuals who are arrested. See § 4.04. Still another concern is that searches  
14 incident to arrest may be more intrusive than is in fact necessary to protect officers or prevent the  
15 destruction of evidence. This is particularly true of searches conducted out in the field. Such  
16 searches often occur in a public setting in view of others, which increases the level of stigma or  
17 humiliation on the part of the arrestee. At the same time, because they take place in a  
18 noncustodial setting—and typically without a supervisor present—there is a greater potential for  
19 abuse.

20 *c. Limitations on scope.* In light of the aforementioned concerns, a number of  
21 jurisdictions have placed limits on searches incident to arrest, either by prohibiting such searches  
22 altogether following an arrest for minor offenses or by prohibiting custodial arrest for minor  
23 offenses. Such policy changes may be especially warranted in jurisdictions that are unable to  
24 address the pretextual use of arrests in other ways. These Principles do not adopt such a  
25 categorical rule. Instead, § 4.04 makes clear that agencies should limit the use of arrests in  
26 circumstances in which less intrusive means would be equally effective at promoting public  
27 safety or preserving order.

28 This Section adds two further limitations: (1) that searches incident to arrest should not  
29 be used as a pretext to look for evidence of crimes unrelated to the offense in question, and (2)  
30 that searches conducted in the field should generally be limited to a pat-down unless there is  
31 cause to believe that the arrestee is concealing a weapon or evidence that would not be

1 uncovered during a pat-down search. The policy urged here would help reduce the incentive to  
2 conduct unnecessary arrests in order to look for evidence of crime, while at the same time  
3 minimizing the intrusiveness of searches that do in fact take place. A number of jurisdictions,  
4 including New York City, have limited the use of field searches in this manner. As discussed  
5 below, officers could then conduct a more thorough search after transport—so long as the search  
6 is conducted pursuant to a written policy that is applied evenhandedly to all arrestees.

7 Jurisdictions may wish to consider additional measures as well. For example, to address  
8 concerns over pretextual use of searches incident to arrest—particularly in circumstances in  
9 which the officer has no intention of actually taking the person into custody—agencies could  
10 require officers to notify dispatchers of the arrest, including the offense for which the person was  
11 arrested, prior to conducting the search. Doing so would both discourage pretextual arrests and  
12 enable departments to monitor officer compliance with these Principles.

13 *d. Distinguishing two kinds of searches.* This Section distinguishes between searches  
14 conducted at the time of the arrest (typically out in the field) and subsequent searches that are  
15 conducted either at the stationhouse or at a detention facility. Although courts have at times  
16 justified *both* categories of warrantless searches as “incident to arrest,” they differ in important  
17 ways that should be reflected in agency policy and practice. Searches conducted  
18 contemporaneously to a custodial arrest are justified by an immediate need to protect officer  
19 safety and secure evidence. In this regard, they are similar to other protective actions that officers  
20 sometimes are permitted to take in the context of a traffic or pedestrian stop—such as ordering a  
21 driver to step out of the car or conducting a frisk.

22 Subsequent searches of arrestees after transport to the station or to a detention facility—  
23 including fingerprinting or DNA collection, inventory searches of impounded vehicles, and  
24 searches of the arrestee’s person or property—are justified by a much broader range of law-  
25 enforcement and institutional goals, which are not necessarily related to the individualized  
26 circumstances of the particular arrest in question. These include the need to identify the arrestee,  
27 to secure the arrestee’s belongings, and to protect jail guards and inmates by ensuring that  
28 potential weapons or contraband are not brought into the facility. In short, they need not be  
29 justified by concerns over officer safety or the destruction of evidence alone. Although these  
30 search procedures are triggered by the fact of arrest, they are indistinguishable from other kinds  
31 of suspicionless, programmatic searches, and should be conducted according to the suspicionless

1 search and seizure Principles in Chapter 5. In particular, they should be conducted either  
2 pursuant to written policies that are applied evenhandedly to all individuals who are taken into  
3 custody, or on the basis of articulable, individualized suspicion, documented in advance, that a  
4 more intrusive search is required of an individual.

### REPORTERS' NOTES

5 Searches incident to arrest are justified on two grounds: protecting the safety of the  
6 officer and securing any evidence that might be on or near the arrestee. As the U.S. Supreme  
7 Court explained in *United States v. Robinson*, 414 U.S. 218 (1973), a custodial arrest places the  
8 officer and the arrestee “in close proximity” for an extended period of time. Evidence shows that  
9 attempted arrests lead to officer injuries and fatalities more than almost any other police activity.  
10 See *2015 Law Enforcement Officers Killed & Assaulted, Fed. Bureau of Investigation: Uniform  
11 Crime Reporting*, tbl. 23, 73, 101. Although dissenting judicial opinions of the last century on  
12 occasion have called the legality of searches incident to arrest into question, see, e.g., *Harris v.  
13 United States*, 331 U.S. 145, 195 (1947) (Jackson, J., dissenting); *Davis v. United States*, 328  
14 U.S. 582, 605 (1946) (Frankfurter, J., dissenting), searches incident to arrest have a long history  
15 of acceptance in American law as well as English law, in which they were used by constables at  
16 least since the 17th century. See Sheppard, *The Offices of Constables, Ch. 8 § 2, no. 4* (London  
17 1650); Welch, *Observations on the Office of Constable 12, 14* (1754).

18 Still, there are two problems with the search-incident-to-arrest authority as presently  
19 constituted. First, in certain circumstances it enables officers to conduct searches in a manner  
20 that is more intrusive than is justified by the underlying rationales of safety and evidence  
21 gathering. Second, the authority incentivizes officers to arrest individuals in circumstances in  
22 which they otherwise would have issued a warning or a citation. See, e.g., *State v. Sullivan*, 16  
23 S.W.3d 551, 552 (Ark. 2000) (officer testified that he arrested driver instead of issuing a citation  
24 because he suspected the driver of being involved with narcotics); *State v. Pierce*, 642 A.2d 947,  
25 961 (N.J. 1994) (expressing concern that an expansive search-incident-to-arrest doctrine “creates  
26 an unwarranted incentive for police officers to ‘make custodial arrests which they otherwise  
27 would not make as a cover for a search which the Fourth Amendment otherwise prohibits.’”  
28 (internal citations omitted)).

29 The Supreme Court has mitigated, though not resolved, these two related problems of  
30 pretextual and overly intrusive searches. In *Arizona v. Gant*, 556 U.S. 332 (2009), the Court  
31 narrowed the scope of searches incident to arrest in the automobile context by holding that  
32 officers may not search an arrestee’s vehicle unless they have reason to believe that the arrestee  
33 could gain access to the vehicle or that the vehicle contains evidence related to the crime of  
34 arrest. In *Riley v. California*, 134 S. Ct. 2473 (2014), the Court held that the permissible scope of  
35 a search incident to arrest does not include the digital contents of the arrestee’s cellular phone.  
36 Despite these selective limitations, the general rule permitting searches incident to arrest endures,  
37 as do the attendant challenges of pretextual and overly intrusive searches.

1           These challenges could be addressed in a variety of ways. Several state courts and  
2 legislatures have rejected the Supreme Court’s broad rule and held that a search incident to arrest  
3 is invalid unless the circumstances justify it under one of the two rationales of evidence  
4 protection and safety. For example, in *State v. Caraher*, 653 P.2d 942 (Or. 1982) the Supreme  
5 Court of Oregon held that a search incident to arrest must be both relevant to the underlying  
6 crime and reasonable in light of all the facts. Similarly, in *Zehrunge v. State*, 569 P.2d 189  
7 (Alaska 1977), the Supreme Court of Alaska held that officers may only conduct a search  
8 incident to arrest in order to search for weapons or to look for evidence of the crime for which  
9 the person is arrested. In *State v. Kaluna*, 520 P.2d 51, 60 (Haw. 1974), the Hawai’i Supreme  
10 Court required that searches incident to arrest be “no greater in intensity than absolutely  
11 necessary under the circumstances.” *Id.* at 58. The Model Code of Pre-Arrest Procedure  
12 similarly adopts a limitation on the circumstances that permit a warrantless search. See MODEL  
13 CODE OF PRE-ARRAIGNMENT PROCEDURE § 230.2 (AM. LAW INST. 1975) (prohibiting searches  
14 incident to “a traffic offense or other misdemeanor”).

15           A number of states also prohibit custodial arrests for certain types of offenses, thereby  
16 eliminating the possibility of a search incident to arrest. See, e.g., ALA. CODE § 32-1-4 (1999)  
17 (prohibiting custodial arrests for all misdemeanor traffic offenses not involving injury to persons  
18 or driving while under the influence); CAL. VEH. CODE ANN. § 40504 (West 2000) (prohibiting  
19 custodial arrests, subject to certain exceptions, for non-felony traffic offenses); KY. REV. STAT.  
20 ANN. § 431.015(1), (2) (Michie 1999) (prohibiting custodial arrests, subject to exceptions, for  
21 misdemeanors if there are reasonable grounds to believe that the person being cited will appear  
22 in court); LA. REV. STAT. ANN. § 32:391 (West 1989) (prohibiting custodial arrest for traffic  
23 violation offenses, subject to exceptions; permitting custodial arrest for traffic misdemeanor and  
24 felony offenses); MINN. R. CRIM. P. 6.01, subdiv. 1(1)(a) (requiring issuance of citations in  
25 misdemeanor cases “unless it reasonably appears to the officer that arrest or detention is  
26 necessary to prevent bodily harm to the accused or another or further criminal conduct, or that  
27 there is a substantial likelihood that the accused will fail to respond to a citation.”); N.M.S.A.  
28 1978, § 66-8-123 (prohibiting custodial arrests, subject to certain exceptions, for misdemeanor  
29 traffic offenses); S.D. CODIFIED LAWS § 32-33-2 (1998) (prohibiting custodial arrests for  
30 misdemeanor traffic violations, subject to exceptions); TENN. CODE ANN. § 40-7-  
31 118(b)(1) (1997) (prohibiting custodial arrests for misdemeanors, subject to exceptions); VA.  
32 CODE ANN. § 46.2-936 (Supp. 2000) (prohibiting custodial arrests, subject to certain exceptions,  
33 for misdemeanor traffic offenses). In states that leave discretion to officers, a number of courts  
34 have held that arrests for minor misdemeanors amount to an abuse of the officers’ discretion to  
35 decide whether to make an arrest. *State v. Brown*, 792 N.E.2d 175 (Ohio 2003) (holding that,  
36 absent certain special circumstances, an arrest for a minor misdemeanor violates the state  
37 constitution); *State v. Bayard*, 71 P.3d 498 (Nev. 2003) (finding that an officer abused his  
38 statutory discretion by using custodial arrest for a traffic violation); *State v. Bauer*, 36 P.3d 892  
39 (Mont. 2001) (finding that an officer abused his statutory discretion by using custodial arrest for  
40 possession of alcohol by a minor); *State v. Harris*, 916 So.2d. 284 (La. Ct. App. 2005) (finding



1 that an officer abused his statutory discretion by using custodial arrest for possession of alcohol  
2 by a minor). Elsewhere, these Principles likewise urge states and agencies to encourage or  
3 require officers to consider alternatives to arrest, including warnings or citations. See § 4.05.

4 In dealing specifically with the problems of pretextual and overly intrusive searches,  
5 these Principles do not adopt either of the two categorical approaches. Instead, this Section  
6 makes clear that an arrest should not be conducted as a pretext to search. See, e.g., *McCoy v.*  
7 *State*, 491 P.2d 127 (Alaska 1971) (“The arrest must not be a pretext for the search; a search  
8 incident to a sham arrest is not valid.”). And it reduces both the incentive for officers to conduct  
9 pretextual arrests and the overall intrusiveness of searches by limiting the scope of a search that  
10 may be conducted out in the field to a pat-down, unless there is cause to believe that a more  
11 exhaustive search is necessary to uncover evidence or a weapon on the arrestee’s person. This  
12 Section permits officers to conduct a more thorough search at the stationhouse or a detention  
13 facility, so long as that search is conducted in accordance with the Principles on suspicionless  
14 searches in Chapter 5, or on the basis of reasonable suspicion that the arrestee is concealing a  
15 weapon or contraband in a manner that would not be detected through a routine search.

16 By drawing a distinction between searches out in the field and searches conducted back at  
17 the stationhouse, this Section ensures a closer fit between the scope of a search incident to arrest  
18 and its permissible rationales. The former is aimed primarily at preventing the destruction of  
19 evidence and ensuring that the individual arrested is safe for transportation. The latter furthers  
20 the additional goal of ensuring the integrity of the detention facility and the safety of other  
21 detainees. At the same time, this Section recognizes that all custodial arrests, no matter the  
22 underlying offense, may present a danger to the officer—and that officers should therefore be  
23 permitted to conduct a pat-down search following any custodial arrest.

24 A number of jurisdictions have adopted similar policies. The New York City Police  
25 Department (NYPD), for example, instructs officers to conduct a pat down in the field, and to  
26 conduct a full search only at the station. See NYPD Patrol Guide, Procedure No. 208-05, Arrests  
27 – General Search Guidelines. The Honolulu Police Department similarly limits the search at the  
28 scene to a pat down. See Honolulu Police Department Policy, Security Control of Arrestees.  
29 Colorado law limits the scope of a search incident to an arrest for a minor traffic violation or for  
30 a minor municipal offense to a protective pat-down search for weapons. See *People v. Clyne*,  
31 541 P.2d 71 (Colo. 1975) (overruled on other grounds by *People v. Meredith*, 763 P.2d 562  
32 (Colo. 1988)).



**CHAPTER 10**  
**EYEWITNESS IDENTIFICATIONS**

1 **§ 10.01. General Principles for Eyewitness Identification Procedures**

2 **Agencies should be cognizant of the scientific research regarding eyewitness**  
3 **perception and memory, and the limits of eyewitness evidence.**

4 **Comment:**

5 *a. Eyewitness identifications.* Officers use a variety of different procedures to ask an  
6 eyewitness to identify a culprit, including: (1) showups; (2) photo arrays; (3) live lineups; and (4)  
7 mugshots and computer presentations of photos in which there is no designated suspect. In a  
8 showup, which usually occurs at or near the crime location and shortly after the crime occurred,  
9 officers present a single, live suspect to a witness. In photo arrays, officers present the eyewitness  
10 with a series of photographs, one of which is the suspect, and the others called “fillers,” or known  
11 non-suspects. Live lineups are less commonly used, in which the suspect and fillers are presented  
12 in person to an eyewitness. Additional procedures may be used in which officers do not have a  
13 suspect. If so, officers may show mugbooks or sets of photographs to see if the eyewitness can  
14 identify a suspect, or they may ask the eyewitness to help prepare a composite image or drawing  
15 of a culprit. This Chapter refers to these various procedures generally as “eyewitness identification  
16 procedures,” but refers to specific procedures when necessary.

17 *b. Scientific research.* A substantial body of basic research examines how humans perceive  
18 images and form visual memory. That research has been complemented by applied research in the  
19 area of eyewitness identification. All of that research has resulted in a large body of knowledge  
20 concerning how to test visual memory accurately, including face identification, and a set of best  
21 practices that are recommended to test and preserve the memory of an eyewitness. Many traditional  
22 identification methods still used by agencies were not designed carefully or based on research.  
23 Such traditional methods can alter or deteriorate the memory of an eyewitness, including because  
24 those methods may be highly suggestive. Poor eyewitness identification procedures can result in  
25 situations in which the eyewitness cannot make an identification, or in false identifications and  
26 wrongful convictions of innocent persons.

1           *c. Procedures for eyewitness identifications.* Agencies should use clear, written procedures  
2 for eyewitness identifications, developed with care and attention to the shortcomings of such  
3 identifications, as demonstrated by scientific research.

4           Eyewitness identification procedures can themselves affect the memory of an eyewitness,  
5 and subpar procedures can outright alter the memory of an eyewitness. Constitutional rulings on  
6 the subject preceded the body of scientific research that has resulted in a set of best practices for  
7 eyewitness identification procedures. As a result, those rulings do not provide a well-informed  
8 constitutional floor. At best, they counsel against highly unnecessary and suggestive conduct by  
9 officers during identification procedures.

10           Agencies should focus on practices informed by scientific research. That scientific research  
11 has resulted in consensus on a series of best practices. Certain other practices are not currently the  
12 subject of scientific consensus, and should be considered a matter of policy choice by agencies.  
13 Further, scientific research continues to advance and produce insights that can improve procedures  
14 for eyewitness identifications. Agencies that conduct eyewitness identifications should be  
15 responsive to developments in research and also in technology.

#### REPORTERS' NOTES

16           Eyewitness identifications are a staple of criminal investigations. But their reliability has  
17 been called into question by decades of scientific research and an explosion of information about  
18 just how potentially unreliable such identifications can be. As the National Academy of Sciences  
19 explained in a landmark 2014 report summarizing the scientific research in the area of human  
20 visual memory, “it is well known that eyewitnesses make mistakes, and their memories can be  
21 affected by various factors including the very law enforcement procedures designed to test their  
22 memories.” NAT’L RESEARCH COUNCIL OF THE NAT’L ACADS., IDENTIFYING THE CULPRIT:  
23 ASSESSING EYEWITNESS IDENTIFICATION 1 (2014). In particular, the hundreds of DNA  
24 exonerations in recent years, the vast majority of which involved eyewitness misidentifications,  
25 have brought home the malleability and fragility of eyewitness memory. *Id.* Research examining  
26 what transpired in misidentifications that resulted in innocent persons being convicted has revealed  
27 the role that poorly designed and suggestive agency procedures can play. BRANDON L. GARRETT,  
28 CONVICTING THE INNOCENT: WHERE CRIMINAL PROSECUTIONS GO WRONG 63-68 (Harvard  
29 University Press, 2011).

30           Unfortunately, there is wide variability among agencies on the subject of eyewitness  
31 evidence. Many agencies have policies that are decades out of date, or they have no written policies  
32 at all. See, e.g., Police Executive Research Forum, A National Survey of Eyewitness Identification  
33 Procedures in Law Enforcement Agencies 46-47 (2013), at [http://policeforum.org/library/  
34 eyewitness-identification/NIJEyewitnessReport.pdf](http://policeforum.org/library/eyewitness-identification/NIJEyewitnessReport.pdf).

1           That said, false identifications and unsound lineup procedures are not a new problem. As  
2 the U.S. Supreme Court has put it: “The vagaries of eyewitness identification are well-known; the  
3 annals of criminal law are rife with instances of mistaken identification.” *United States v. Wade*,  
4 388 U.S. 218, 228 (1967). In 1977, in adopting its current due process rule regulating eyewitness  
5 identification evidence, the Court emphasized how “reliability is the linchpin in determining the  
6 admissibility of identification testimony.” *Manson v. Brathwaite*, 432 U.S. 98, 114 (1977).

7           At the time *Manson* was decided, however, little was known about what precisely had an  
8 impact upon the reliability of eyewitness identifications. As a result, the Supreme Court’s existing  
9 framework does not comport with scientific research. Although the Supreme Court’s due process  
10 test to assess eyewitness evidence asks whether police used suggestive identification procedures,  
11 any such suggestiveness can be excused based on a set of “reliability” factors. *Manson*, 432 U.S.  
12 at 114. The “reliability” factors adopted by the Court in *Manson*, having been already set out in its  
13 earlier ruling in *Neil v. Biggers*, 409 U.S. 188 (1972), ask that the judge examine: (1) the  
14 eyewitness’s opportunity to view the defendant at the time of the crime; (2) the eyewitness’s degree  
15 of attention; (3) the accuracy of the description that the eyewitness gave of the criminal; (4) the  
16 eyewitness’s level of certainty at the time of the identification procedure; and (5) the length of  
17 time that had elapsed between the crime and the identification procedure. *Id.* The Court did not  
18 assign any particular weight to these various factors.

19           The Supreme Court more recently has held that when unreliability in eyewitness  
20 identifications is not due to intentional police action, it is not regulated under the Due Process  
21 Clause at all. *Perry v. New Hampshire*, 132 S. Ct. 716 (2012). The Justices in *Perry* stated that the  
22 Court did “not doubt either the importance or the fallibility of eyewitness identifications,” but held  
23 that state legislation, evidence law, and safeguards such as expert testimony and jury instructions  
24 should be relied on to ensure the accurate presentation of eyewitness evidence. *Id.* at 728-729.

25           A large body of scientific research has called into question the validity of many of the  
26 Supreme Court’s so-called “reliability” factors. For scholarly criticism in light of the social-science  
27 research, see, e.g., Gary L. Wells & Deah S. Quinlivan, *Suggestive Eyewitness Identification*  
28 *Procedures and the Supreme Court’s Reliability Test in Light of Eyewitness Science: 30 Years*  
29 *Later*, 33 LAW & HUM. BEHAV. 1, 16 (2009); Timothy P. O’Toole & Giovanna Shay, *Manson v.*  
30 *Brathwaite Revisited: Towards a New Rule of Decision for Due Process Challenges to Eyewitness*  
31 *Identification Procedures*, 41 VAL. U. L. REV. 109 (2006); Suzannah B. Gambell, *The Need To*  
32 *Revisit the Neil v. Biggers Factors: Suppressing Unreliable Eyewitness Identifications*, 6 WYO. L.  
33 REV. 189 (2006).

34           Several state courts have departed from the federal due process rule, relying on the research  
35 that has developed in the intervening decades. See, e.g., *State v. Ramirez*, 817 P.2d 774, 780-781  
36 (Utah 1991) (altering three “reliability” factors to focus on effects of suggestion); *State v.*  
37 *Marquez*, 967 A.2d 56, 69-71 (Conn. 2009) (adopting detailed criteria for assessing  
38 suggestion); *Brodes v. State*, 614 S.E.2d 766, 771 & n.8 (Ga. 2005) (rejecting use of eyewitness  
39 certainty); *State v. Hunt*, 69 P.3d 571, 576 (Kan. 2003) (adopting five-factor “refinement” of  
40 federal due process test).

1           The Supreme Court’s acquiescent approach to eyewitness identification, and the current  
2 state of research, increase the need for laws and policies that adhere to our best understanding of  
3 the reliability of eyewitness testimony and the factors that in fact heighten or diminish reliability  
4 in any given case. And in fact, several state courts have rejected the *Manson* test entirely based on  
5 that scientific research. *State v. Henderson*, 27 A.3d 872 (N.J. 2011); *State v. Lawson*, 291 P.3d  
6 673 (Or. 2012); *Commonwealth v. Gomes*, 22 N.E.3d 897 (Mass. 2015); *Young v. State*, 374 P.3d  
7 395 (Alaska 2016). The New Jersey Supreme Court in its *Henderson* decision endorsed the use of  
8 pretrial hearings to examine eyewitness identification evidence, together with detailed jury  
9 instructions on the issue. *State v. Henderson*, 27 A.3d 872 (N.J. 2011). In contrast, the Oregon  
10 Supreme Court has endorsed review of the reliability of eyewitness evidence under its evidence  
11 rules. *State v. Lawson*, 291 P.3d 673 (Or. 2012). The Massachusetts Supreme Judicial Court has  
12 recommended more concise jury instructions on eyewitness identification evidence.  
13 *Commonwealth v. Gomes*, 22 N.E.3d 897 (Mass. 2015); see also *Young v. State*, 374 P.3d 395  
14 (Alaska 2016). Each of these rulings has made it all the more important that agencies adopt best  
15 practices to ensure accuracy at the time that eyewitness identification procedures are conducted.

16           Scientific evidence concerning human perception, vision, and memory provides a  
17 framework that should inform the collection and use—both pretrial and at trial—of eyewitness  
18 evidence, including through jury instructions and presentations by expert witnesses. As the  
19 National Academy of Sciences (NAS) has put it, “the best guidance for legal regulation of  
20 eyewitness identification evidence comes not . . . from constitutional rulings, but from the careful  
21 use and understanding of scientific evidence to guide fact-finders and decision-makers.” See NRC,  
22 IDENTIFYING THE CULPRIT, at 30; see also Final Report of the President’s Task Force on 21st  
23 Century Policing 2.4 (May 2015) (recommending adoption of identification procedures “that  
24 implement scientifically supported practices that eliminate or minimize presenter bias or  
25 influence”).

26           In scientific terms, the law should take account of both *estimator* variables and *system*  
27 variables. Gary L. Wells, *Applied Eyewitness-Testimony Research: System Variables and*  
28 *Estimator Variables*, 36 J. OF PERSONALITY & SOC. PSYCHOL. 1546-1557 (1978) (first coining the  
29 terms “estimator” and “system variables”). Both types of variables can affect the memory of an  
30 eyewitness. Estimator variables are factors relating to the conditions of the crime-scene viewing,  
31 such as the lighting, the eyewitness’s eyesight, familiarity with the perpetrator, or race. Studies  
32 have shown that individuals display an “own race” bias, or a greater difficulty identifying persons  
33 of a different race. See NRC, IDENTIFYING THE CULPRIT, at 96. Estimator variables cannot be  
34 controlled by law enforcement. In contrast, *system variables* are factors associated with the  
35 procedures that officers use to obtain identifications by an eyewitness. System variables can be  
36 controlled by law enforcement.

37           More than three decades of scientific research into eyewitness memory has begun to have  
38 an impact on how police conduct eyewitness identifications, as well as how judges regulate  
39 eyewitness evidence in the courtroom. That research informs the specific principles recommended  
40 in this Section. It also should inform the overall approach toward police investigations relying on

1 eyewitness evidence, as well as subsequent judicial use and review of such evidence. Scientific  
2 research can inform each step of the process, from collection to use of eyewitness evidence in the  
3 judicial system. Although scientific consensus exists on the use of a range of crucial best practices,  
4 there is a lack of consensus on certain other factors and practices, making any recommendations  
5 on those topics more provisional and qualified. When further research is needed, these Principles  
6 note the appropriate qualifications.

7 We note that the same protections against suggestion are important for “earwitness”  
8 identifications, in which a witness is asked whether a suspect’s voice can be recognized. Indeed,  
9 sometimes both face and voice recognition identification procedures are conducted. The same  
10 principles apply regardless of which memory task is involved in the procedure in question.

11 Although the procedures described here apply to identifications by human eyewitnesses,  
12 facial-recognition technology is increasingly used to identify faces from video or images. Jose  
13 Pagliery, *FBI Launches a Face Recognition System*, CNN Money (Sept. 16, 2014), <http://money.cnn.com/2014/09/16/technology/security/fbi-facial-recognition>. Such algorithms also can raise  
14 questions regarding reliability, as can the interpretation of the results of such technologies by  
15 human experts. John Nawara, Note, *Machine Learning: Face Recognition Technology Evidence  
16 in Criminal Trials*, 49 U. LOUISVILLE L. REV. 601, 604-607 (2011). As with the procedures for  
17 human eyewitnesses, agencies should evaluate the reliability of any technology adopted to use face  
18 recognition to identify faces or other biometric information.  
19

## 20 § 10.02. Eyewitness Identification Procedures

21 **Police agencies should adopt standard, written eyewitness identification procedures**  
22 **to regulate the use of showups, lineups, photo arrays, and any other eyewitness identification**  
23 **techniques they employ, whether in the field or the station. Agencies should ensure that the**  
24 **specific procedures they use to test the memory of an eyewitness are informed by extant**  
25 **research. Those procedures should include:**

26 (a) **direction to conduct any identification as early as possible in the course of**  
27 **an investigation;**

28 (b) **instructions to explain the procedure to the eyewitness in easily understood**  
29 **terms;**

30 (c) **procedures for fairly selecting non-suspect or “filler” persons or images to**  
31 **display to the eyewitness;**

32 (d) **procedures for presenting persons or images to the eyewitness in a**  
33 **nonsuggestive manner;**

- 1                   **(e) procedures for documenting any identification or nonidentification by the**  
2                   **eyewitness; and**  
3                   **(f) procedures that employ sequential or simultaneous presentation of photos**  
4                   **in photo lineups.**

5 **Comment:**

6           *a. Written policy.* Traditionally, eyewitness identification procedures were not governed  
7 by written police policies. Rather, this was the type of task that officers would learn informally  
8 and on the job. Agencies did not have standardized instructions or procedures. Some agencies still  
9 do not have written eyewitness identification policies, and that problem remains a pressing one.  
10 This Section sets out each of the key elements of identification procedures, based on current  
11 scientific research. This Section also indicates areas that still are the subject of disagreement and  
12 ongoing research in the scientific community, such as presentation of photographs sequentially  
13 rather than simultaneously.

14           *b. Timing.* The memory of an eyewitness degrades over time. It is crucial that officers  
15 conduct eyewitness identification procedures as promptly as possible.

16           *c. Procedures.* The procedures for conducting an eyewitness identification should be clear  
17 and easily understood by witnesses. Standard procedures will ensure uniformity and avoid any  
18 misunderstanding by, or suggestion to, the eyewitness, even if inadvertent. It is important, for  
19 example, to convey that the culprit may or may not be present, because a witness may assume they  
20 have been asked to identify the culprit. Procedures should also be blind or blinded, as stated in  
21 § 10.05. The confidence of an eyewitness should be recorded, and the entire procedure should be  
22 recorded, as stated in § 10.08.

23           *d. Fillers.* The more fillers presented in an eyewitness identification procedure, the more  
24 reliable a test of the eyewitness's memory the procedure is. Typical rules require that five fillers  
25 be presented along with the suspect. Some agencies require that six or more be included, which  
26 provides a still more rigorous test.

27           An unfair or biased lineup, in which the suspect stands out, can lead to errors. Rules should  
28 clearly set out how to select fillers. Such rules should require that police, after obtaining a  
29 description from the eyewitness, should select fillers who each fairly reflect the eyewitness's  
30 description of the suspect. The fillers should not make the suspect stand out in a manner that is



1 suggestive. It may be necessary, for example, to mask a portion of the fillers' faces, if the suspect  
2 has a tattoo that the fillers would lack.

3         Only a single suspect should be present in any given lineup procedure. If there is more than  
4 one suspect, then additional and separate lineup procedures should be conducted for each  
5 additional suspect.

6         *e. Documenting identifications.* Eyewitness identification procedures should be  
7 documented, preferably by use of a video and audio recording, unless exigent circumstances make  
8 doing so impossible. Procedures should also be developed to mask the identity of eyewitnesses  
9 appearing in a recording, when there are investigative needs to do so. It is important that the  
10 procedure be documented, with the statements and identification decisions by the eyewitness  
11 written down. It is important to contemporaneously document the confidence of the eyewitness,  
12 because that confidence may change quite a bit based on feedback after the lineup.

13         *f. Uniform policy and training.* It is also important that agencies use standard eyewitness  
14 identification procedures, including with clear, written policies and training on their  
15 administration. The modern approach, treating eyewitness identifications as an experiment and a  
16 test of human memory, depends upon standard protocols and procedures. Absent consistent and  
17 clear procedures, there can be no uniformity or consistency of results, and eyewitnesses may  
18 themselves be confused or misled during an eyewitness identification procedure. As with all areas  
19 of agency policy, written policy must be implemented through sound training and supervision, not  
20 just in the academy, but in service. Supervision should include discipline for officers who fail to  
21 adhere to written policy and training on eyewitness identification procedures. Such supervision  
22 and training is important not just for officers who routinely conduct lineups, but for all officers  
23 who conduct investigations relying on eyewitness memory. For example, an officer's field  
24 interview with an eyewitness, designed to elicit a description of a possible suspect, can play a  
25 crucial role in any subsequent identification procedures.

26         *g. Right to counsel.* Based on U.S. Supreme Court rulings interpreting the U.S.  
27 Constitution, defendants have a right to have counsel present at in-person lineups after an  
28 indictment, but they do not have a right to counsel at photo arrays, which are the most common  
29 method employed for eyewitness identification procedures. *United States v. Wade*, 388 U.S. 218,  
30 228 (1967); *United States v. Ash*, 413 U.S. 300, 321 (1973). Nevertheless, police should notify

1 counsel and permit counsel to be present during any identification procedures, in order to ensure  
2 the fairness of the procedures and to permit independent observation of the procedures.

3 *h. Research on “sequential” or “simultaneous” is not decisive.* There is a choice whether  
4 to present photos simultaneously (all at the same time) or sequentially (one at a time), and research  
5 on this issue at present is inconclusive. Many policing agencies view the sequential lineup as the  
6 more conservative option, because evidence suggests that it can prevent additional “comparison  
7 shopping” among images. Studies show that sequential lineups do reduce false identifications.  
8 Police more concerned with the cost of false identifications may choose that option. Sequential  
9 lineups also may reduce correct identifications. Some recent research suggests that for many  
10 eyewitnesses, the choice of procedure does not significantly impact results. Still, there is a live  
11 scientific debate about which type of presentation of images is the most accurate.

12 *i. Written policy on presentation of photographs.* Agencies should adopt a policy regarding  
13 the question of whether to conduct sequential or simultaneous presentation methods during  
14 eyewitness identification procedures, and should not leave this decision to the discretion of  
15 officers. In practice, some eyewitnesses may ask to view a sequential lineup a second time, which  
16 agencies commonly refer to as a second “lap.” If permitted to do so, a sequential procedure is in  
17 effect much like a simultaneous one. As a result, the differences between the procedures may not  
18 turn out to be crucial in practice. In any event, the choice of which type of procedure to use,  
19 sequential or simultaneous, cannot be fully answered based on the scientific research, and thus  
20 requires a considered policy decision by the agency.

### REPORTERS’ NOTES

21 Traditionally, many agencies did not have formal policies or practices concerning  
22 eyewitness identification procedures. Often any training that was conducted was highly informal.  
23 Michael S. Wogalter, Roy S. Malpass & Dawn E. McQuiston, *A National Survey of U.S. Police*  
24 *on Preparation and Conduct of Identification Lineups*, 10 PSYCHOL., CRIME & L. 69 (2004) (survey  
25 of 220 agencies finding that over half reported no “formal training” on eyewitness identification  
26 procedures). Surveys indicate that many law-enforcement agencies continue to lack written  
27 policies on the subject of eyewitness identifications; other agencies adopt written policies, but ones  
28 that do not comport with best practices. See, e.g., Police Executive Research Forum, *A National*  
29 *Survey of Eyewitness Identification Procedures in Law Enforcement Agencies* 46-47 (2013), at  
30 <http://policeforum.org/library/eyewitness-identification/NIJEyewitnessReport.pdf> (reporting in a  
31 national survey of over 600 agencies that 77 percent lacked written policy for showups and 64  
32 percent reported no written policy for lineups or photo arrays); Brandon L. Garrett, *Eyewitness*

1 *Identifications and Police Practices in Virginia*, 3 VA. J. OF CRIM. L. 1 (2014) (study of Virginia  
2 law-enforcement policies, of which few complied with state model policy on lineup procedures).  
3 Without standard policies and procedures, it can be far more difficult to assess what happened  
4 during an eyewitness identification procedure. Moreover, it is difficult to ensure standard quality  
5 of the identifications if no standardized protocols are observed.

6 The National Academy of Sciences Committee Report made quite clear its  
7 recommendation that blind or blinded lineups be used by law enforcement. NAT'L RESEARCH  
8 COUNCIL OF THE NAT'L ACADS., IDENTIFYING THE CULPRIT: ASSESSING EYEWITNESS  
9 IDENTIFICATION 3 (2014). Section 10.05 develops the importance of conducting lineups in that  
10 fashion.

11 Policies should explain how to select “filler” photographs that fairly resemble the  
12 description of the suspect and the suspect, so that the suspect does not stand out in the photo array.  
13 Resources should be made available to police agencies so that they have access to archives of  
14 photographs and are then able to have a sufficiently wide selection of photographs for use in photo  
15 arrays. A move toward computerized selection of photographs and administration of photo arrays  
16 may improve the fairness of the photographs selected. In addition, policies should discourage the  
17 use of multiple viewings, which can raise the risk of error. See *State v. Henderson*, 27 A.3d 872,  
18 900-901 (N.J. 2011) (stating that “law enforcement officials should attempt to shield witnesses  
19 from viewing suspects or fillers more than once.”).

20 Agencies should adopt standard instructions for eyewitnesses. Those instructions should  
21 inform the eyewitness that a culprit may or may not be present in the lineup. See NRC,  
22 IDENTIFYING THE CULPRIT, *supra*, at 107. That instruction is crucial because an eyewitness  
23 otherwise may expect that the culprit will be present and that there is a correct choice that should  
24 be made. As discussed in § 10.04, showups should be limited in their use. Such an instruction can  
25 still be given before conducting a showup, and agencies should have standard instructions and  
26 procedures to avoid undue suggestion in showup procedures. See NRC, IDENTIFYING THE CULPRIT,  
27 *supra*, at 108. As discussed in § 10.08, the confidence of the eyewitness should be documented,  
28 preferably through a recording of the entire eyewitness identification procedure.

29 Standard procedures should use terminology that is easily understandable by eyewitnesses.  
30 See NRC, IDENTIFYING THE CULPRIT, *supra*, at 107. There are a number of state statutes and model  
31 policies that provide useful models for agencies. See, e.g., N.C. GEN. STAT. § 15A-284.52 (West  
32 2007); OHIO REV. CODE ANN. § 2933.83 (West 2010); The Commission On Accreditation For Law  
33 Enforcement Agencies, Inc., CALEA Standards For Law Enforcement Agencies: 42.2.11 Line-  
34 Ups, International Association of Chiefs of Police, Model Policy: Eyewitness Identification  
35 (2010), at [http://www.theiacp.org/PublicationsGuides/ModelPolicy/ModelPolicyList/tabid/487/](http://www.theiacp.org/PublicationsGuides/ModelPolicy/ModelPolicyList/tabid/487/Default.aspx)  
36 [Default.aspx](http://www.theiacp.org/PublicationsGuides/ModelPolicy/ModelPolicyList/tabid/487/Default.aspx); Virginia Department of Criminal Justice Services, Model Policy on  
37 Lineups/Eyewitness Identification 2-39 (2013). In addition, police should make routine  
38 accommodation in policy and in practice for non-English speakers or others requiring  
39 accommodation, due to hearing or linguistic impairment or other disability. See NRC,

1 IDENTIFYING THE CULPRIT, *supra*, at 107. A move to computerized presentation of images can  
2 similarly ensure that clear, standard instructions and procedures are consistently used.

3 Many jurisdictions have adopted all or some portions of these recommendations. To date,  
4 18 states have adopted legislation regarding eyewitness identification procedures. Of those, 17  
5 states (California, Connecticut, Florida, Georgia, Illinois, Kansas, Louisiana, Maryland, Nebraska,  
6 North Carolina, Ohio, Texas, Utah, Vermont, Virginia, West Virginia, and Wisconsin) have  
7 enacted statutes directly requiring that law-enforcement officials adopt written procedures for  
8 eyewitness identifications. Some of those states regulate the particular procedures to be used,  
9 focusing on the key features of a sound policy as outlined above, including blind or blinded lineups,  
10 clear written instructions, and documenting the confidence of an eyewitness. See CAL. PEN. CODE  
11 § 859.7 (2018); CONN. GEN. STAT. § 54-1p (West 2012); FLA. CODE ANN. § 92.70 (West 2017);  
12 GA. CODE ANN. § 17-20-2 (West 2016); 725 ILL. COMP. STAT. § 5/107A-5 (West 2003); KANSAS  
13 SB 428 (2016); LA. CODE CRIM. PRO. 251-253 (2018); MD. CODE ANN., PUB. SAFETY § 3-506  
14 (West 2007); N.C. GEN. STAT. § 15A-284.52 (West 2007); NEB. R.S. § 81-1455 (2016); OHIO REV.  
15 CODE ANN. § 2933.83 (West 2010); TEX. CODE CRIM. PROC. ANN. art. 38.20 (West 2011); UTAH  
16 CODE ANN. § 77-8-4 (West 1980); VA. CODE ANN. § 19.2-390.02 (West 2005); VA. CODE ANN.  
17 § 9.1-102.54; 13 V.S.A. § 5581; W. VA. CODE ANN. § 62-1E-1 (West 2013); WIS. STAT. § 175.50  
18 (West 2005). Additional states (Nevada and Rhode Island) have passed statutes recommending  
19 further study, tasking a group with developing best practices, or requiring some form of written  
20 policy. NEV. REV. STAT. § 171.1237 (West 2011); R.I. GEN. LAWS § 12-1-16 (West 2012); 2010  
21 LEG. REG. SESS. (Vt. 2010).

22 Many other jurisdictions have adopted model policies, and still others have had legislation  
23 introduced and considered on this subject. Several state courts have also issued rulings regulating  
24 lineup practices (e.g., New Jersey’s Supreme Court has required documentation of identification  
25 procedures). *State v. Delgado*, 902 A.2d 888 (2006). Many more jurisdictions and departments  
26 also have voluntarily adopted guidelines or policies regulating eyewitness identifications. See, e.g.,  
27 John J. Farmer, Jr., Attorney General of the State of New Jersey, “Letter to All County Prosecutors:  
28 Attorney General Guidelines for Preparing and Conducting Photo and Live Lineup Identification  
29 Procedures” (April 18, 2001), available at <http://www.state.nj.us/lps/dcj/agguide/photoid.pdf>;  
30 CALEA Standards for Law Enforcement Agencies: 42.2.11 Lineups, at [http://www.calea.org/](http://www.calea.org/content/standards-titles)  
31 [content/standards-titles](http://www.calea.org/content/standards-titles); International Association of Chiefs of Police, Model Policy: Eyewitness  
32 Identification (2010).

33 Traditionally, agencies used simultaneous eyewitness identification procedures, whether  
34 those procedures were live or involved photographs. The move to photo arrays made it far more  
35 feasible to present images one at a time. Research had suggested that sequential presentations  
36 eliminated “comparison shopping” by eyewitnesses who would scan across images to locate the  
37 one most similar to their recollection. Many agencies, concerned with preventing wrongful  
38 convictions, switched to sequential presentation of images in photo-array procedures. However,  
39 more recent research suggests that the differences between the procedures are harder to assess and

1 that it is not a straightforward choice. See NRC, IDENTIFYING THE CULPRIT, *supra*, at 117. More  
2 research is needed on this question.

3 For a detailed discussion of the current research on this question and the ongoing debate in  
4 the scientific community over the preferable approach, see NRC, IDENTIFYING THE CULPRIT, *supra*,  
5 at 117-118; see also, e.g., Nancy Steblay et al., *Eyewitness Accuracy Rates in Sequential and*  
6 *Simultaneous Lineup Presentations: A Meta-Analytic Comparison*, 25 LAW & HUM. BEHAV. 457,  
7 459-460, 462-464, 468 (2001) (recommending use of the sequential procedure to reduce use of  
8 “relative judgment”); Laura Mickes et al., *Receiver Operating Characteristic Analysis of*  
9 *Eyewitness Memory: Comparing the Diagnostic Accuracy of Simultaneous Versus Sequential*  
10 *Lineups*, 18 J. EXPERIMENTAL PSYCHOL. APPLIED 361, 374-375 (2012) (recommending further  
11 empirical research).

12 In sum, scientists have increasingly questioned how great the difference is between  
13 simultaneous and sequential procedures. There is some evidence that the sequential procedure is  
14 the more conservative approach, particularly in terms of reducing false identifications. At the same  
15 time, it may reduce the number of correct identifications. The practical difference between the two  
16 procedures may be particularly small when agencies typically permit a witness to take a “second  
17 lap” and look at a sequential series of photos again. Selecting the right approach requires a policy  
18 choice by the policing agency, considering research but also practical considerations. See NRC,  
19 IDENTIFYING THE CULPRIT, *supra*, at 119.

20 This question whether to adopt a sequential or simultaneous procedure highlights that, as  
21 in any scientific area, research continues to advance. Agencies, understandably, cannot revise their  
22 policies as quickly as science advances. One advantage of computerized presentations of images  
23 to eyewitnesses is that the program can readily be changed to adjust presentation methods. Funds  
24 should be made available for development and implementation of convenient computerized  
25 presentations, such as tablet-based eyewitness identifications.

26 Agencies should proceed cautiously regarding this topic of sequential versus simultaneous  
27 presentation. However, this scientific debate is a sign of engagement and hard work by researchers.  
28 It should not be taken as a reason not to adopt important protections, such as blind or blinded  
29 procedures, clear instructions, or recording, all of which have been endorsed by consensus in the  
30 scientific community.

### 31 § 10.03. Threshold for Conducting Eyewitness Identifications

32 **Policing agencies should not conduct eyewitness identifications unless they have:**

33 **(a) a strong basis to believe that the suspect was the culprit and should**  
34 **therefore be presented to the eyewitness, and**

35 **(b) a strong basis to believe that the eyewitness can reliably make an**  
36 **identification.**

**1 Comment:**

2 *a. Sufficient suspicion.* Police should not place a suspect in an eyewitness identification  
3 procedure without a strong basis for doing so, including reasonable cause or suspicion that the  
4 suspect actually is responsible for the crime. Preferably, the officers should have evidence of guilt  
5 independent of the eyewitness's belief that he or she can make an identification. In addition,  
6 officers, consistent with § 10.05, should not convey to the eyewitness any of that basis for  
7 suspecting a person, because that would constitute highly suggestive conduct. Live identification  
8 procedures must be conducted within the limits of any applicable rules on seizing persons.

9 *b. Basis to conduct identification procedure.* The decision to conduct an eyewitness  
10 identification procedure should not be undertaken lightly, or without adequate cause and  
11 evidentiary support. The strong basis to conduct such a procedure should include a basis to believe  
12 that the eyewitness can make an accurate identification. Officers should inquire into the  
13 circumstances concerning the eyewitness's initial viewing of the suspect. Officers should not ask  
14 an eyewitness who lacks the ability, or who expresses an inability, to recall the appearance of the  
15 culprit to make an identification. In addition, officers, consistent with § 10.05, should not make  
16 any suggestions to the eyewitness that the eyewitness can make a successful identification.

17 *c. No trawling.* Officers normally should not conduct eyewitness identification procedures  
18 if they do not have a suspect. Officers should not engage in forms of "trawling," which is the use  
19 of mugshot presentations of large sets of images of individuals for whom there is no cause for  
20 suspicion related to the incident in question. The risks of eyewitness error are too great to justify  
21 placing large numbers of innocent individuals at risk of having their images erroneously identified.

**REPORTERS' NOTES**

22 We do not know how often eyewitness identifications are conducted, but according to one  
23 estimate, they may be conducted in many tens of thousands of cases a year. Alvin G. Goldstein,  
24 June E. Chance & Gregory R. Schneller, *Frequency of Eyewitness Identification in Criminal*  
25 *Cases: A Survey of Prosecutors*, 27 BULL. PSYCHONOMIC SOC'Y 71, 73 (January 1989). Yet,  
26 human facial recognition poses real challenges for individuals. Scientific research has documented  
27 how even under optimal viewing conditions, eyewitnesses can have great difficulty identifying  
28 strangers and even non-strangers.

29 Constitutional rulings do little to address the preliminary question that agencies face:  
30 whether to conduct an eyewitness identification procedure at all. The few lower courts to have  
31 considered the issue are divided on whether police must have probable cause under the Fourth  
32 Amendment to place an individual in a live (but not a photo-array) eyewitness identification

1 procedure. *Biehunik v. Felicetta*, 441 F.2d 228, 230 (2d Cir. 1971); but see, e.g., *Wise v. Murphy*,  
2 275 A.2d 205, 212-215 (D.C. 1971); *State v. Hall*, 461 A.2d 1155 (N.J. 1983). Mug-shot arrays or  
3 composite images, or photo arrays, are not regulated under the Fourth Amendment at all, since  
4 they do not involve a “seizure” of a person, but rather the person’s image.

5 The U.S. Supreme Court held that when officers do not engage in intentional conduct  
6 during an eyewitness identification, officers are not regulated under the Due Process Clause at all.  
7 *Perry v. New Hampshire*, 132 S. Ct. 716 (2012). Some state courts have adopted different rules,  
8 stating that reliability review does apply regardless of whether there was police action. See, e.g.,  
9 *State v. Chen*, 27 A.3d 930, 937 (N.J. 2011).

10 In *United States v. Wade*, the Supreme Court held that, once indicted, a person has a right  
11 under the Sixth Amendment to have a lawyer present at a lineup. 388 U.S. 218, 235-236 (1967).  
12 However, that right does not extend to photo-array procedures, which are far more commonly used  
13 today than live or in-person lineups. *U.S. v. Ash*, 413 U.S. 300, 321 (1973); Gary L. Wells & Deah  
14 S. Quinlivan, *Suggestive Eyewitness Identification Procedures and the Supreme Court’s*  
15 *Reliability Test in Light of Eyewitness Science: 30 Years Later*, 33 LAW & HUM. BEHAV. 1, 16  
16 (2009) (a “large percentage of jurisdictions in the U.S. use only photographs and never use live  
17 lineups”).

18 It is essential, though, for agencies to determine whether an eyewitness and an  
19 identification procedure using that eyewitness are likely to be reliable. Unfortunately, many crimes  
20 occur under suboptimal viewing conditions. For example, research suggests that the presence of a  
21 weapon at a crime scene and heightened stress both can make it more difficult later to recall  
22 accurately the face of a suspect. NAT’L RESEARCH COUNCIL OF THE NAT’L ACADS., IDENTIFYING  
23 THE CULPRIT: ASSESSING EYEWITNESS IDENTIFICATION 93-94 (2014). In addition, eyewitness  
24 identification procedures often occur after the passage of time.

25 It is particularly important to resolve whether a witness is capable of making an eyewitness  
26 identification before proceeding with an identification procedure, because once an eyewitness is  
27 asked to make an identification and does so, confidence in the identification will predictably  
28 increase over time. An eyewitness may appear highly confident and reliable in court, even if the  
29 eyewitness was highly uncertain and tentative during an eyewitness identification procedure at a  
30 police station. This phenomenon is termed “confidence inflation.” Gary L. Wells et al., *Eyewitness*  
31 *Identification Procedures: Recommendations for Lineups and Photospreads*, 22 LAW & HUM.  
32 BEHAV. 603-647 (1998).

33 Officers thus should carefully inquire into the viewing conditions under which an  
34 eyewitness saw the suspect, as well as the passage of time since the viewing occurred. *Id.* at 98.  
35 Officers should be trained to interview possible eyewitnesses in order to elicit as much information  
36 as possible and without asking leading questions that might suggest information to the witness.  
37 Research on cognitive interviewing can inform such training. Ronald P. Fisher & R. Edward  
38 Geiselman, *The Cognitive Interview Method of Conducting Police Interviews: Eliciting Extensive*  
39 *Information and Promoting Therapeutic Jurisprudence*, 33 INT’L. J. L. & PSYCHIATRY 321, 321  
40 (2010); Ronald Fisher, *Interviewing Victims and Witnesses of Crime*, 1 PSYCHOL., PUB. POL’Y &

1 L. 732, 735 (1995). Such interviews not only can produce descriptions of suspects, but they can  
2 inform an understanding of what factors may have affected the memory of an eyewitness, such as  
3 whether a weapon was present, or whether the event was highly stressful. See *Henderson*, 27 A.3d  
4 at 904-905 (“When a visible weapon is used during a crime, it can distract a witness and draw his  
5 or her attention away from the culprit.”).

6 Similarly, one safeguard before proceeding with an identification procedure is to test the  
7 face-memory ability of an eyewitness. Different people have differing abilities to remember the  
8 faces of strangers. Agencies can, as a matter of policy and practice, assess the face-memory ability  
9 of an eyewitness prior to deciding whether to conduct an identification procedure. One such test  
10 is the Cambridge Face Memory Test. See Cambridge Face Memory Test, at [http://www.bbk.ac.uk/  
11 psychology/psychologyexperiments/experiments/facememorytest/startup.php](http://www.bbk.ac.uk/psychology/psychologyexperiments/experiments/facememorytest/startup.php).

12 Finally, agencies should be cognizant that eyewitnesses may seek to identify offenders on  
13 their own. The U.S. Supreme Court has held that when unreliability in eyewitness identifications  
14 is not due to intentional police action, it is not regulated under the Due Process Clause. However,  
15 agencies should seek to prevent situations in which eyewitnesses themselves, without the  
16 supervision of officers, search online and on social media, or in physical locations, in order to try  
17 to locate suspects. In doing so, they may be affected by suggestive circumstances, and police  
18 cannot control the viewing conditions or aim to prevent misidentifications. For those reasons,  
19 agencies should discourage such trawling activities and question eyewitnesses to ascertain and to  
20 document whether or how they have engaged in any such trawling.

#### 21 § 10.04. Showup Procedures

22 **Agencies should minimize the use of showup procedures and should adopt standard**  
23 **procedures for conducting prompt showups in a neutral manner and location.**

#### 24 **Comment:**

25 *a. Minimizing showups.* Showup procedures, in which a single image or live person is  
26 presented to an eyewitness, even if conducted promptly after an incident, are especially  
27 problematic because they are inherently suggestive. This is because by definition they involve a  
28 lone subject, rather than an array with fillers that can test the accuracy of an eyewitness. They  
29 create greater risks of error, including both identification of an innocent person and  
30 nonidentification of a guilty person. As such, showups should be used only rarely, and only within  
31 a very short amount of time after an incident.

32 Officers should instruct eyewitnesses not to look for culprits among members of the  
33 community and not to search through social media to locate images of potential culprits. Such



1 viewings can in effect result in a showup, in which the eyewitness looks at a single image of a  
2 person. Instead, officers should instruct eyewitnesses to provide any relevant information to  
3 officers, so that officers can obtain images of suspects and decide whether to conduct an eyewitness  
4 identification procedure.

5 *b. Procedures for showups.* Agencies should ensure that if and when showups are  
6 conducted, standard and clear instructions are used. A showup should be conducted in a neutral  
7 location, without any additional suggestion beyond the fact of the solo presentation of the suspect.  
8 The eyewitness should be told that the culprit may or may not be present even when the eyewitness  
9 is shown only a single person. The eyewitness should be told that he or she does not have to make  
10 an identification and that the investigation will continue regardless of what choice is made.

11 *c. When to conduct showups.* Exigent circumstances may support the need to conduct a  
12 showup identification immediately after an incident, including the need to rule out or identify a  
13 person near a crime scene. Such exigency should be interpreted narrowly. Agencies should seek  
14 out technology—such as software with image archives—that could permit the quick creation of  
15 photo arrays in order to present those images to witnesses in the field rather than resort to using a  
16 showup. Facial-recognition software, if properly used, can provide a means to construct fair  
17 lineups for use in eyewitness identification procedures.

18 *d. In-court identifications.* When an eyewitness is permitted to identify a defendant in  
19 court, that identification is in effect a showup, since there are no fillers present, and it is obvious  
20 where the defendant is sitting, at counsel table. Agencies should ensure through policy and practice  
21 that an eyewitness is never asked for the first time to make an identification in court, but rather,  
22 that an eyewitness identification procedure has been conducted previously. Judges should restrict  
23 the use of in-court identifications, and instead ensure that agencies conduct proper eyewitness  
24 identification procedures out of court, and then permit the eyewitness to testify concerning those  
25 procedures, rather than conduct an additional in-court identification.

### REPORTERS' NOTES

26 Showup procedures are inherently suggestive, since they involve the presentation of a  
27 single witness to a suspect. As the U.S. Supreme Court has noted, “[t]he practice of showing  
28 suspects singly to persons for the purpose of identification, and not as part of a lineup, has been  
29 widely condemned.” *Stovall v. Denno*, 388 U.S. 293, 302 (1967). Research confirms that showups  
30 pose special risks concerning accuracy. A. Daniel Yarmey et al., *Accuracy of Eyewitness*  
31 *Identifications in Showups and Lineups*, 20 *LAW & HUM. BEHAV.* 459, 464-465 (1996); Nancy

1 Steblay et al., *Eyewitness Accuracy Rates in Police Showup and Lineup Presentations: A*  
2 *MetaAnalytic Comparison*, 27 *LAW & HUM. BEHAV.* 523, 538 (2003). One reason why showups  
3 are much less reliable is that they are not nearly as strong a memory test; there are no fillers present  
4 and the choice is a simple “yes” or “no.” Without any fillers present, in a showup an error will  
5 result in the identification of an innocent suspect, as opposed to a filler who is known to be  
6 innocent.

7 In *Stovall*, however, the Supreme Court rejected any per se rule against the use of showups.  
8 Showups are legally permitted when conducted shortly after a crime. During that brief time period,  
9 an eyewitness’s memory will be more recent and perhaps more accurate. Showup identifications  
10 are traditionally justified, despite their inherent suggestiveness, by the need to rule out or identify  
11 a fleeing felon or person located near a crime scene shortly after the commission of the crime.  
12 However, during that brief period, investigators may not have time to adequately investigate a  
13 potential suspect, nor inquire sufficiently into the viewing conditions.

14 Showups are commonly used. In one survey, 62 percent of agencies reported using  
15 showups. Police Executive Research Forum, *A National Survey of Eyewitness Identification*  
16 *Procedures in Law Enforcement Agencies* 48 (March 2013). There is evidence that some agencies  
17 overuse showup procedures and conduct showups when it is unnecessary to do so. Procedures for  
18 the permissibility and conduct of showups were traditionally lacking. See NAT’L RESEARCH  
19 COUNCIL OF THE NAT’L ACADS., *IDENTIFYING THE CULPRIT: ASSESSING EYEWITNESS*  
20 *IDENTIFICATION* 28 (2014) (“While some law enforcement agencies use a standard procedure with  
21 written instructions when conducting a showup, there is no indication that such procedures are  
22 used uniformly.”).

23 There is also troubling evidence that showups, which are already inherently suggestive,  
24 can be conducted even more suggestively than necessary. For example, officers may place the  
25 suspect with proceeds of the crime or in restraints, or officers may make suggestive remarks to the  
26 eyewitness. Some officers also have shown single photographs of suspects to an eyewitness, which  
27 is completely unnecessary, since at that point officers could use that photograph to construct a  
28 photo array. (Such a procedure occurred in *Simmons v. United States*, 390 U.S. 377 (1968).)  
29 Showups have been unnecessarily conducted, either using photographs or a live individual, in the  
30 days and weeks after an incident, not just in the immediate hours after a crime. Clear rules should  
31 govern when showup identifications are permitted. When showups are permitted, it is important  
32 that there be standard procedures and a clear set of standard instructions used. See NRC,  
33 *IDENTIFYING THE CULPRIT*, *supra*, at 107 (“the committee recommends the development and use  
34 of a standard set of instructions for use with a witness in a showup.”). Several courts have further  
35 regulated showup procedures. See, e.g., *State v. Dubose*, 699 N.W.2d 582, 593-594 (Wis. 2005)  
36 (“We conclude that evidence obtained from an out-of-court showup is inherently suggestive and  
37 will not be admissible unless, based on the totality of the circumstances, the procedure was  
38 necessary. A showup will not be necessary, however, unless the police lacked probable cause to  
39 make an arrest or, as a result of other exigent circumstances, could not have conducted a lineup or  
40 photo array.”); see also *Commonwealth v. Johnson*, 650 N.E.2d 1257, 1261 (Mass. 1995); *People*

1 v. Adams, 423 N.E.2d 379, 383-384 (N.Y. 1981). These Principles recommend that state courts  
2 and lawmakers further regulate showups to permit consistent rules across a jurisdiction for their  
3 use.

4 The U.S. Supreme Court has held that single viewings of a suspect, which would otherwise  
5 constitute a showup, are not regulated by the Due Process Clause when officers did not intend to  
6 conduct an eyewitness identification procedure. *Perry v. New Hampshire*, 132 S. Ct. 716, 718  
7 (2012). In that case, for example, the witness was detained near the crime scene, and the eyewitness  
8 looked out of her apartment, saw him there, and made an identification. *Id.* Officers can take  
9 measures to avert such unintended eyewitness viewing, including by not unnecessarily detaining  
10 a suspect within view of possible eyewitnesses, by instructing potential eyewitnesses not to search  
11 for suspects on their own in person or online, and by instead assuring potential eyewitnesses that  
12 any leads will be investigated and any images of possible culprits will be displayed in a proper  
13 eyewitness identification procedure. There have been cases in which witnesses searched on social  
14 media for images of the culprit and made identifications as a result. *New Jersey v. Chen*, 27 A.3d  
15 930 (N.J. 2011). Officers cannot control the conditions in which such identifications are made and  
16 cannot prevent suggestive circumstances from resulting in errors, except by giving strong  
17 instructions to eyewitnesses not to engage in such searches.

18 Judges should not permit courtroom identifications, which are not a test of an eyewitness's  
19 memory, and instead should rely on a recounting of the earlier confidence of the eyewitness at the  
20 time of the identification procedure. In-court identifications are, in effect, showup identifications.  
21 There are no fillers and there is no test of the eyewitness's memory. In-court identifications are  
22 dramatic but unreliable.

23 Agencies should ensure through policy and practice that an eyewitness is never asked for  
24 the first time to make an identification in court, but rather, that an eyewitness identification  
25 procedure has been conducted previously. In-court identifications are highly suggestive, and  
26 several courts have restricted the use of such identifications. The Massachusetts Supreme Judicial  
27 Court and Connecticut Supreme Court have ruled that no in-court identification is permitted if an  
28 out-of-court identification was suppressed as unduly suggestive. *Commonwealth v. Johnson*, 45  
29 N.E.3d 83, 92 (Mass. 2016) (“Where the suggestiveness does not arise from police conduct, a  
30 suggestive identification may be found inadmissible only where the judge concludes that it is so  
31 unreliable that it should not be considered by the jury. In such a case, a subsequent in-court  
32 identification cannot be more reliable than the earlier out-of-court identification, given the inherent  
33 suggestiveness of in-court identifications and the passage of time.”); *State v. Dickson*, 141 A.3d  
34 810 (Conn. 2016). For the argument that courts should not use “independent source rules” to  
35 permit an in-court identification following suggestive out-of-court identifications, nor should they  
36 typically permit them at all, see Brandon L. Garrett, *Eyewitnesses and Exclusion*, 65 VAND. L.  
37 REV. 451 (2012). For a ruling limiting in-court-identification use for first-time identifications, see  
38 *Commonwealth v. Crayton*, 21 N.E.3d 157 (Mass. 2014). That court explained, “Where, as here,  
39 a prosecutor asks a witness at trial whether he or she can identify the perpetrator of the crime in  
40 the court room, and the defendant is sitting at counsel’s table, the in-court identification is

1 comparable in its suggestiveness to a showup identification.” Id. at 166; see also *United States v.*  
2 *Archibald*, 734 F.2d 938, 941, modified, 756 F.2d 223 (2d Cir. 1984) (“Any witness, especially  
3 one who has watched trials on television, can determine which of the individuals in the courtroom  
4 is the defendant . . .”). Other courts have adopted a burden-shifting approach toward in-court  
5 identifications. See *State v. Hickman*, 330 P.3d 551, 568 (Or. 2015) (“Courts considering the  
6 admissibility of first-time in-court identifications generally have placed the burden of seeking a  
7 prophylactic remedy on the defendant”) (citing *United States v. Brown*, 699 F.2d 585, 594 (2d Cir.  
8 1983), and *U.S. v. Domina*, 784 F.2d 1361, 1369 (9th Cir. 1986)).

### 9 § 10.05. Blind or Blinded Procedures

10 **For all identification procedures other than showups, agencies should adopt**  
11 **procedures in which the person administering the identification procedure does not know**  
12 **which person is the suspect. There are two options:**

13 **(a) blind procedures, in which the person who administers the procedure does**  
14 **not know the suspect; or**

15 **(b) blinded procedures, in which the person who administers the procedure**  
16 **cannot see which persons or photographs the suspect is examining. This can be**  
17 **accomplished with techniques such as the use of folders, or computerized presentation**  
18 **of images, that shield the images from the person administering the procedure.**

#### 19 **Comment:**

20 *a. Blind procedures.* A central concern with eyewitness identification procedures is that  
21 they can affect or alter the memory of the eyewitness. Officers can do so unintentionally. Indeed,  
22 just by asking an eyewitness to participate in an identification procedure, officers create an  
23 expectation that a suspect will be present and presented to the eyewitness. An eyewitness naturally  
24 will be looking to the officer for guidance, reinforcement, and feedback. Instructing an eyewitness  
25 that the officer administering the procedure does not know which is the suspect makes clear at the  
26 outset that there cannot be any such guidance, reinforcement, or feedback. As a result, blind or  
27 blinded procedures are a crucial protection. Such procedures can minimize the chance that police  
28 suggest the desired selection to an eyewitness viewing a live or a photo-array identification  
29 procedure. Scientists have long recommended that such procedures be used as an essential feature  
30 of the experimental method, to prevent experimenter-expectancy bias.

1           *b. Blinded procedures.* Subsection (b) provides alternatives to using an unrelated officer;  
2 for smaller agencies, it may be impractical to obtain a second officer unfamiliar with an  
3 investigation. To address this practical concern, an eyewitness identification procedure can be  
4 “blinded,” even if the administrator is not himself or herself “blind” and unfamiliar with the  
5 suspect. One extremely inexpensive way to accomplish blinding is to place the images in folders  
6 and shuffle them, so that the eyewitness can examine the images in folders without the  
7 administrator being able to see which images are being viewed. A number of jurisdictions and state  
8 model policies incorporate this “folder shuffle” method for blinding eyewitness identifications,  
9 particularly to facilitate blinded identification procedures among smaller departments that cannot  
10 spare officers unfamiliar with investigations. Using computerized presentation of images also can  
11 remove the administrator from the process of presenting images to the eyewitness, and can  
12 minimize opportunity for suggestion.

#### REPORTERS’ NOTES

13           The use of a blind or blinded method is extremely important to the use of any technique  
14 designed to test evidence. The use of blinding is “central to the scientific method” because it “it  
15 minimizes the risk that experimenters might inadvertently bias the outcome of their research,  
16 finding only what they expected to find.” See NAT’L RESEARCH COUNCIL OF THE NAT’L ACADS.,  
17 IDENTIFYING THE CULPRIT: ASSESSING EYEWITNESS IDENTIFICATION 107 (2014). Thus, blinding is  
18 essential to any objective factfinding and is central to any type of experiment.

19           This recommendation is based upon decades of research in a number of fields on the ways  
20 in which the expectations of an administrator can bias subjects, including through inadvertent  
21 means of communication. “Even when lineup administrators scrupulously avoid comments that  
22 could identify which person is the suspect, unintended body gestures, facial expressions, or other  
23 nonverbal cues have the potential to inform the witness of his or her location in the lineup or photo  
24 array.” *Id.* at 73. “The ‘blinded’ procedure minimizes the possibility of either intentional or  
25 inadvertent suggestiveness and thus enhances the fairness of the criminal justice system.” *Id.*

26           It is particularly important to ensure blinding in the context of eyewitness evidence,  
27 because eyewitnesses are particularly suggestible. Eyewitnesses naturally may look to law  
28 enforcement for guidance and reassurance, and they may be highly motivated to try to reach the  
29 answer that an officer thinks is the correct answer. Officers themselves may be motivated to assist  
30 the eyewitness in reaching the answer believed to be correct. As the National Academy of Sciences  
31 has put it, “[t]he ‘blinded’ procedure minimizes the possibility of either intentional or inadvertent  
32 suggestiveness and thus enhances the fairness of the criminal justice system.” See *id.* at 73; see  
33 also Final Report of the President’s Task Force on 21st Century Policing 2.4 (May 2015)  
34 (recommending adoption of procedures “that implement scientifically supported practices that  
35 eliminate or minimize presenter bias or influence”).

1           Some in law enforcement have raised concerns regarding the costs of conducting blind  
2 procedures. See NRC, *IDENTIFYING THE CULPRIT*, supra, at 107. One common practical concern  
3 raised regarding the use of blind procedures is that smaller jurisdictions may not be able to spare  
4 an additional officer unfamiliar with an investigation. There is a ready, practical, and cost-effective  
5 alternative available for such agencies. The folder-shuffle method is an inexpensive and practical  
6 solution. In addition, agencies can use computerized administration of eyewitness identification  
7 procedures. See NRC, *IDENTIFYING THE CULPRIT*, supra, at 107. Using folder-shuffle methods or  
8 computerized presentation can minimize the costs of using blind or blinded methods.

9           By using blind or blinded methods, agencies can avoid the risks of error created by  
10 suggestiveness. And because constitutional rules focus on undue suggestiveness, blind or blinded  
11 methods can avert constitutional challenges to eyewitness identification evidence. Indeed,  
12 agencies can avert any cross-examination or state-evidence-law challenge to eyewitness evidence  
13 by showing that no suggestion could have occurred during an eyewitness identification procedure  
14 that was blind or blinded. See NRC, *IDENTIFYING THE CULPRIT*, supra, at 107.

## 15 § 10.06. Obtaining and Documenting Eyewitness Confidence Statements

16           **Agencies should ask eyewitnesses to express verbally how confident they are in their**  
17 **identification at the time it is made.**

### 18 **Comment:**

19           *a. Documenting confidence.* It is crucial to document, preferably using a recording  
20 following § 10.08, the confidence of an eyewitness at the time of an initial eyewitness  
21 identification procedure. The reason why is that confidence can change over time. The confidence  
22 of an eyewitness is comparatively more reliable at the time of the initial identification procedure  
23 than subsequently, such as in the courtroom. Although eyewitness memory and confidence are  
24 both malleable, they do not naturally improve over time. Absent documentation of the confidence  
25 of an eyewitness, there may be no record that the confidence of an eyewitness has been artificially  
26 enhanced over time, for example, by suggestion, reinforcement, or feedback.

27           *b. Qualitative statements.* Although scientists might prefer that confidence be recorded  
28 using a numerical scale, few agencies have followed such an approach, due to a concern that  
29 quantitative scores might be misunderstood in the courtroom. Instead, the approach has been to  
30 record confidence by asking an eyewitness to express it in his or her own words. It is important  
31 that the confidence statement not be anchored by any suggestions from the administrator. For  
32 example, an eyewitness should not be given a constrained set of pre-selected responses, or be

1 simply asked if he or she is absolutely sure or not. An officer should ask an eyewitness to report  
2 his or her confidence and the officer should document it verbatim.

3 *c. Recording.* Recording or videotaping entire identification procedures also can ensure  
4 that a confidence statement is recorded accurately. Whether recorded or not, however, police  
5 should be trained carefully not to provide any suggestion or encouragement prior to the lineup  
6 procedure, which would make the confidence statement a less reliable indicator.

### REPORTERS' NOTES

7 At trial, a confident eyewitness can be extremely powerful to jurors. That confidence may  
8 not correspond to reliability, however; the eyewitness may not in fact have been sure at the time  
9 of the earlier eyewitness identification procedure. “At trial, an eyewitness’ artificially inflated  
10 confidence in an identification’s accuracy complicates the jury’s task of assessing witness  
11 credibility and reliability.” Perry v. New Hampshire, 132 S. Ct. 716, 731-732 (2012) (Sotomayor,  
12 J., dissenting).

13 Although courts sometimes have focused unduly on the confidence of an eyewitness in the  
14 courtroom, the confidence of an eyewitness at the time of an eyewitness identification procedure  
15 can provide important information about the reliability of an identification. John Wixted & Gary  
16 Wells, *The relationship between eyewitness confidence and identification accuracy: A new*  
17 *synthesis*, 18 PSYCHOL. SCI. PUB. INT., 10-65 (2017).

18 For that reason, leading scientific groups have recommended strongly that the confidence  
19 of an eyewitness be carefully documented, in a manner in which that confidence is not influenced  
20 by the officer conducting the procedure. Such a confidence statement should permit the eyewitness  
21 to express confidence without any influence or suggestion. Although a numerical score might be  
22 more objective, agencies have favored asking the witnesses to express confidence in his or her  
23 own words. See NAT’L RESEARCH COUNCIL OF THE NAT’L ACADS., IDENTIFYING THE CULPRIT:  
24 ASSESSING EYEWITNESS IDENTIFICATION 107 (2014) (“the administrator should obtain level of  
25 confidence by witness’ self-report (this report should be given in the witness’ own words) and  
26 document this confidence statement verbatim.”). The procedures outlined here are cumulative: the  
27 confidence statement is only reliable evidence if the procedure itself was blind or blinded and  
28 conducted properly, and if there has not been any suggestion to otherwise affect the confidence of  
29 the eyewitness. Wixted & Wells, *supra*.

30 Courts have long treated the confidence of an eyewitness as a marker of the eyewitness’s  
31 reliability, but in a manner not supported by scientific research. For example, in *Manson v.*  
32 *Brathwaite*, the U.S. Supreme Court emphasized the eyewitness’s level of certainty as a factor that  
33 should be considered when evaluating the reliability of an eyewitness identification once it has  
34 been determined that there was undue suggestion. 432 U.S. 98, 114 (1977). Although confidence  
35 at the time of an eyewitness identification procedure can provide evidence of reliability—as  
36 opposed to confidence at the time of a court procedure, which is not reliable—confidence at the

1 time of an eyewitness identification is not a reliable indicator if officers have engaged in  
2 suggestion.

3 Suggestion, including signaling or bias in the lineup, or reinforcement or feedback, can  
4 increase the confidence of an eyewitness in predictable ways. Such false confidence is not to be  
5 credited. And yet, the Supreme Court’s “reliability” test in *Manson* does exactly that: it excuses  
6 undue suggestion by allowing a judge to point to the resulting confidence of an eyewitness. For  
7 that reason, scientists have condemned that test as itself unreliable. See NRC, IDENTIFYING THE  
8 CULPRIT, supra, at 6 (“the test treats factors such as the confidence of a witness as independent  
9 markers of reliability when, in fact, it is now well established that confidence judgments may vary  
10 over time and can be powerfully swayed by many factors.”); see also Gary L. Wells & Deah S.  
11 Quinlivan, *Suggestive Eyewitness Identification Procedures and the Supreme Court’s Reliability*  
12 *Test in Light of Eyewitness Science: 30 Years Later*, 33 LAW & HUM. BEHAV. 1, 16 (2009).

13 The experience from known wrongful-conviction cases bolsters the concern among  
14 researchers that confidence statements provide useful information, but only if an eyewitness  
15 identification procedure is conducted properly to eliminate suggestion. Among persons exonerated  
16 by DNA testing, not only did mistaken eyewitness identifications occur in three-quarters of the  
17 cases, but—almost without exception—those mistaken eyewitnesses testified at trials that they had  
18 complete confidence that they had chosen the culprit, despite earlier uncertainty expressed at the  
19 time of their identifications. BRANDON L. GARRETT, CONVICTING THE INNOCENT: WHERE  
20 CRIMINAL PROSECUTIONS GO WRONG 63-68 (2011).

21 Careful documentation of confidence at the time of an eyewitness identification is  
22 particularly important given the malleability of confidence and the changes in a witness’s  
23 confidence that may occur during the preparation for a trial. As the National Academy of Sciences  
24 put it, “confidence levels expressed at later times are subject to recall bias, enhancements stemming  
25 from opinions voiced by law enforcement, counsel and the press, and to a host of other factors that  
26 render confidence statements less reliable.” See NRC, IDENTIFYING THE CULPRIT, supra, at 74.

27 Thus, the recommendation is that police ask about eyewitness confidence in an open-ended  
28 way, without leading or suggesting (for example) that an eyewitness must be 100 percent certain.  
29 The recommendation is also that police ask an eyewitness to describe confidence in their own  
30 words. Doing so avoids forcing an eyewitness into rigid boxes, such as “completely sure, not sure,”  
31 and the like, which similarly may lead the eyewitness or affect confidence. More research may  
32 develop improved methods for assessing eyewitness accuracy and confidence in the future. See  
33 NRC, IDENTIFYING THE CULPRIT, supra, at 79. For example, the time that an eyewitness takes to  
34 make an identification may be associated with accuracy, but further research is necessary to  
35 examine that possibility.



1    **§ 10.07. Reinforcement or Feedback**

2           **Officers should not provide feedback, encouragement, or reinforcement to**  
3 **eyewitnesses before, during, or after an identification procedure.**

4    **Comment:**

5           *a. Avoiding suggestion.* An overarching goal of these Principles is to avoid suggestion so  
6 that an eyewitness's memory is assessed in a reliable manner. Suggestion in the form of feedback  
7 or reinforcement from officers can powerfully affect an eyewitness. Consistently applied, clear  
8 and neutral verbal instructions can help to prevent any such feedback. If officers depart from that  
9 script and make additional encouraging or confirming remarks, the memory of the eyewitness can  
10 be affected or even altered. It can be quite understandable and natural for an officer to desire to  
11 congratulate or support an eyewitness who is able to make an identification. That is why it is  
12 important that policies forcefully bar any such feedback or reinforcement.

13           *b. Preventing reinforcement or feedback.* Blind or blinded procedures can minimize the  
14 opportunity for suggestive comments, feedback, or reinforcement to occur, before, after, or during  
15 an eyewitness identification, as discussed in § 10.05. Policy and training should reflect the need to  
16 minimize interaction with an eyewitness, and particularly the type of encouraging remarks or  
17 conduct that might contaminate the eyewitness identification by providing feedback.

18           *c. Trial preparation.* Following an eyewitness identification, the eyewitness then may have  
19 additional conversations with officers and with prosecutors. In particular, as part of the preparation  
20 for hearings or a trial, the eyewitness may be given information about the defendant. That  
21 information can powerfully affect the eyewitness's confidence that the correct identification was  
22 made. Officers and lawyers should encourage cooperation and participation of witnesses without  
23 disclosing information that might affect the memory of a witness. However, because such  
24 information may be communicated, the effect of such interactions on memory makes it all the  
25 more important that a careful confidence statement be taken at the time of the initial eyewitness  
26 identification procedure.

**REPORTERS' NOTES**

27           Eyewitness memory is highly malleable. Suggestion can powerfully affect the reliability  
28 of an eyewitness, and suggestion can occur before, during, and after an eyewitness identification  
29 procedure. Scientific research has shown that the accuracy and confidence of an eyewitness can  
30 be affected by feedback or reinforcement provided by officers before, during, or after the

1 procedure. See, e.g., Nancy K. Steblay et al., *Sequential Lineup Laps and Eyewitness Accuracy*,  
 2 35 LAW & HUM. BEHAV. 262, 271 (2011); A. B. Douglass & Nancy K. Steblay, *Memory Distortion*  
 3 *in Eyewitnesses: A Meta-Analysis of the Post-Identification Feedback Effect*, 20 APPLIED  
 4 COGNITIVE PSYCHOL. 859-869 (2006); Gary L. Wells et al., *Eyewitness Identification Procedures:*  
 5 *Recommendations for Lineups and Photospreads*, 22 LAW & HUM. BEHAV. 603, 630-631 (1998).

6 Blind or blinded procedures seek to eliminate the possibility of reinforcement or feedback  
 7 during an eyewitness identification procedure, because the officer does not know which person is  
 8 the suspect and cannot provide any cues even inadvertently; that is the purpose of such procedures.  
 9 However, blind procedures, together with an accurate record of an eyewitness identification  
 10 procedure, will not necessarily prevent suggestion in the form of reinforcement or feedback that  
 11 occurred before or after that procedure. For example, if an eyewitness is told that the culprit has  
 12 been arrested and is present in a photo array, even if the eyewitness identification procedure is  
 13 videotaped, the suggestion already will have occurred and may affect the eyewitness's memory  
 14 and decisionmaking. Similarly, if an eyewitness is congratulated on making the correct choice and  
 15 given other confirming information after the procedure, that eyewitness will be predictably more  
 16 confident at the time of any hearing or trial. Carl M. Allwood, Jens Knutsson & Pär A. Granhag,  
 17 *Eyewitnesses Under Influence: How Feedback Affects the Realism in Confidence Judgements*, 12  
 18 PSYCHOL., CRIME & L. 25-38 (2006).

19 This Section recognizes that as part of trial preparation, officers and prosecutors must  
 20 discuss many aspects of the case with an eyewitness. That process inevitably will cement the  
 21 eyewitness's confidence, including based on the simple fact that a case is going forward based in  
 22 part on the identification evidence. However, even as part of that preparation process, agencies  
 23 should, through policy and training, counsel against reinforcement or feedback to the eyewitness.

## 24 § 10.08. Recording Eyewitness Identification Procedures

25 **As a matter of standard practice, eyewitness identification procedures should be**  
 26 **recorded when feasible.**

### 27 **Comment:**

28 *a. Recording procedures.* A video and audio recording creates a record of the eyewitness  
 29 identification procedure, documenting the sorts of issues discussed in these Principles, including  
 30 the procedures that were followed, the confidence of any witness who makes an identification, and  
 31 additional important information, such as the length of time or the ease with which the eyewitness  
 32 made the identification. Such information may be quite probative in court, either to bolster the  
 33 accuracy and reliability of an identification, or to identify flaws in an eyewitness's identification.

**REPORTERS' NOTES**

1           The National Academy of Sciences, in its report, strongly recommended recording  
2 eyewitness identification procedures. See NAT'L RESEARCH COUNCIL OF THE NAT'L ACADS.,  
3 IDENTIFYING THE CULPRIT: ASSESSING EYEWITNESS IDENTIFICATION 74 (2014). There are few  
4 practical obstacles to doing so in the case of photo-array identification procedures. Field  
5 identifications, such as showups, also can be recorded, but doing so may not always be as feasible;  
6 police body cameras can make such recordings feasible in the field.

7           This recommendation is consistent with statements in these Principles that evidence should  
8 be recorded. It is particularly important to record eyewitness identification evidence, because many  
9 subtle features of the eyewitness identification can provide extremely important information.  
10 These features include: any extraneous, reinforcing comments made by officers; the precise time  
11 taken to make an identification; how the photographs are presented; the body language of the  
12 officers; and the words the eyewitness uses to express confidence in an identification.

13           One practical consideration with electronic recording of identifications is that in some  
14 cases, the confidentiality of an eyewitness should be safeguarded. In such situations, law  
15 enforcement should use procedures, such as covering the face of the eyewitness, or masking, in  
16 the video and perhaps also in the audio, to protect eyewitnesses from potential retaliation.

17           Judicial review of eyewitness identification evidence can be usefully informed by  
18 recordings. A recording can demonstrate that an identification procedure was conducted blind and  
19 in the appropriate manner, and it can show vividly how confident an eyewitness is. On the other  
20 hand, a recording can demonstrate that an identification was not conducted properly or that an  
21 eyewitness was uncertain. There should be no judicial presumption of regularity of adherence to  
22 eyewitness identification procedures if law-enforcement officials failed to adhere to a policy  
23 requiring video recording of eyewitness identification procedures and it was feasible to record  
24 such a procedure.



## CHAPTER 11

### POLICE QUESTIONING

1    **§ 11.01. Objectives of Police Questioning**

2           **The goal of police questioning is to obtain accurate and reliable information, while**  
3 **seeking to minimize the amount of undue coercion used and treating persons with dignity**  
4 **and fairness.**

5    **Comment:**

6           *a. Accuracy.* Law enforcement has a strong interest in obtaining accurate and reliable  
7 evidence using police questioning. Police questioning can produce highly probative evidence,  
8 including incriminating statements and witness statements, which can be the most important  
9 evidence in criminal investigations. However, police questioning also can produce unreliable  
10 evidence. The central goal of interviews and interrogation—of a suspect or others—is to secure  
11 accurate information. The use of procedures and methods designed to elicit accurate information,  
12 test information’s accuracy, and carefully document information through recording, can ensure  
13 police questioning furthers its appropriate goal. Such safeguards are essential; the problem of false  
14 confessions is well known. Not only can physical coercion and torture lead individuals to implicate  
15 themselves and others falsely, but it is now equally understood that psychological pressure can do  
16 the same. Scientific research has shed light on the ways in which psychological pressure can induce  
17 false confessions, and that research—as well as innovations by law-enforcement agencies—  
18 provides methods to minimize the risk of obtaining false or unreliable confession statements.  
19 Individuals are different and may react to a police interview in very different ways. If officers  
20 begin questioning, they should keep an open mind and seek to corroborate the individual’s story  
21 to assess its veracity.

22           These Principles do not always track constitutional rulings. Constitutional rulings  
23 recognize the dangers of “involuntary” confessions, but do not provide significant protection  
24 against false confessions, and largely do not address the reliability of confessions. Traditional  
25 constitutional standards require heightened attention to questioning conducted when a suspect is  
26 placed in “custody.” As discussed in the next Section, these Principles do not rest on this  
27 distinction. However, these Principles recognize that the more serious an offense, the greater the  
28 law-enforcement interest, such that more sustained questioning may be appropriate.

1           *b. Coercion.* These Principles reflect the view that agencies should minimize the coercion  
2 that is placed on individuals during police questioning. By coercion, these Principles mean  
3 pressure placed upon individuals to cooperate with police questioning in a responsive way. Neither  
4 witnesses nor suspects should be unduly coerced. These Principles focus on the questioning of  
5 suspects. Though there typically is less reason to place pressure on witnesses who are not suspected  
6 of wrongdoing because they less often are reluctant to share information with law enforcement, to  
7 the degree that officers seek to persuade reluctant witnesses, the same principles apply. Coercion  
8 can produce false-confession evidence and false statements, implicating accuracy concerns. In  
9 addition, while effectiveness alone would not justify undue coercion, less coercive techniques have  
10 been used by agencies with great success, and there is no evidence that they are less effective.  
11 Coercion also harms the legitimacy interests described next, because applying undue pressure to  
12 individuals during police questioning harms individual dignity.

13           The following Principles identify methods aimed at minimizing the coercion used during  
14 interviews and interrogations. Although these Principles reflect the values important to  
15 constitutional rulings concerning the Fifth Amendment, they do not track constitutional standards,  
16 which typically do not address the degree of coercion that police may use during questioning.

17           *c. Legitimacy.* An important goal of police questioning, as with policing generally, is  
18 legitimacy, including whether members of the public support and cooperate with the police.  
19 Legitimacy requires treating individuals with dignity, and it harms the dignity of individuals to  
20 subject them to undue pressure to incriminate themselves. As a society, we abhor the use of torture  
21 to secure information from citizens. We equally abhor the use of undue psychological coercion to  
22 secure information from citizens. Thus, in addition to the goal of obtaining accurate information  
23 useful in criminal investigation—and minimizing coercion—it is important that agencies conduct  
24 interrogations in a manner that is fair and respectful of dignity. The use by agencies of unduly  
25 coercive or deceptive techniques can undermine the legitimacy of law enforcement.

26           *d. Characteristics of persons being questioned.* As is further developed in § 11.05,  
27 vulnerable populations—including but not limited to juveniles and persons with mental-health  
28 needs—should be questioned with particular care, and to the minimal extent possible. Doing so  
29 serves each of the three interests described above: accuracy, minimizing coercion, and legitimacy.  
30 Before questioning, officers should assess the characteristics of the person to be questioned, in

1 order to identify such vulnerable individuals. Policy, training, and additional resources, such as  
2 the collaboration of mental-health professionals, can assist officers in making such assessments.

3 *e. Types of questioning.* Officers speak to witnesses in circumstances ranging from  
4 informal information gathering from cooperative witnesses in the field to questioning of suspects  
5 at a police station. These Principles recognize that all police questioning has as its common goal  
6 the accurate, minimally coercive, and legitimate investigation of criminal matters. As a result,  
7 while interviews of suspects are the focus of these Principles, there is no a firm dividing line  
8 between relatively more informal interviews—often conducted outside the police station, of  
9 persons who may be witnesses or potential suspects—and interrogations, conducted in a more  
10 formal manner and typically in a room at a police station. Each of those types of questioning is  
11 vitally important to the preparation of many criminal cases. Information from witnesses as well as  
12 suspects can provide crucial information to officers and agencies.

13 A detailed body of constitutional law applies to police questioning of suspects. One  
14 important area of constitutional law—the *Miranda* doctrine—draws a line by asking whether a  
15 person is deemed to be in “custody.” See *Miranda v. Arizona*, 384 U.S. 436, 444 (1966). A  
16 determination that an individual is in custody, broadly speaking, establishes an obligation to: (1)  
17 provide a set of warnings before a custodial interrogation begins, and (2) honor requests for  
18 counsel. Constitutional law has very little to say about noncustodial questioning by officers, other  
19 than requiring any statement to have been “voluntarily” obtained. The focus in constitutional law  
20 on the issue of “custody” can be quite formalistic, and remote from the concerns that motivate  
21 these Principles. For example, an innocent person who is not formally in custody still may face  
22 great pressure to confess falsely. A vulnerable person, such as a juvenile or mentally ill person,  
23 may receive unfair treatment that implicates concerns of legitimacy, even if not considered a  
24 suspect and not formally deemed to be in custody during the questioning. That said, the concerns  
25 with accuracy, coercion, and legitimacy may well be greater in the settings in which more formal  
26 custodial questioning occurs. No matter in what form or setting questioning occurs, police  
27 professionals ought to have an abiding interest in getting it right. Thus, these Principles do not take  
28 as their starting place the line between custodial and noncustodial interviews. Rather, the focus is  
29 on obtaining accurate statements with minimal coercion.

30 *f. Policy, training, and supervision.* To ensure that police questioning yields accurate  
31 information, while minimizing coercion, law-enforcement agencies should have in place sound

1 policy, appropriate training, and adequate supervision. Written policies should describe in advance  
 2 how police questioning should be conducted, consistent with § 1.05, and those policies should be  
 3 as detailed as is necessary to ensure compliance with these Principles. Training should provide  
 4 officers with techniques to carry out these policies. Supervisors should review transcripts or video  
 5 of questioning carried out by officers in order to improve training and to provide guidance to  
 6 officers.

### REPORTERS' NOTES

7 Police questioning is indispensable to criminal investigations. It can include relatively  
 8 informal police questioning of witnesses, as well as more formal interrogation of suspects, as  
 9 discussed in § 11.04. A confession can help to solve a crime that otherwise might have gone  
 10 unsolved. If a suspect volunteers details about a crime that were not made public, that can provide  
 11 officers with very probative evidence of guilt. Moreover, many suspects volunteer their guilt quite  
 12 readily. Careful and professional questioning of non-suspect witnesses can elicit further  
 13 information that may prove crucial to understanding and solving a crime. These Principles focus  
 14 primarily on suspects, and not witnesses, because the concerns with coercion and legitimacy are  
 15 heightened when suspects face pressure to potentially incriminate themselves. However, it is  
 16 important that sound practices also be used when witnesses, including fully cooperative witnesses,  
 17 are questioned.

18 Police interrogation methods have evolved in important ways. That torture or use of  
 19 physical coercion can cause false confessions has been long known. Well-known false confessions  
 20 in America date back to Colonial times, to the Salem Witch trials of 1692. Saul M. Kassin et  
 21 al., *Police-Induced Confessions: Risk Factors and Recommendations*, 34 L. & HUM. BEHAV. 3, 4  
 22 (2010). While use of the third degree has been forbidden for decades by law enforcement, training  
 23 and policy still commonly permit, if not encourage, the use of a high degree of psychological  
 24 coercion of suspects. The leading interrogation training manual emphasizes the use of detailed  
 25 methods designed to secure confessions using psychological techniques, including threats,  
 26 promises, and deception of suspects. FRED E. INBAU, JOHN E. REID, JOSEPH P. BUCKLEY & BRIAN  
 27 C. JAYNE, *CRIMINAL INTERROGATIONS AND CONFESSIONS* (5th ed. 2013). In recent decades, it has  
 28 become better understood that such forms of psychological coercion similarly can produce false  
 29 confessions. See, e.g., Steve A. Drizin & Richard A. Leo, *The Problem of False Confessions in*  
 30 *the Post-DNA World*, 82 N.C. L. REV. 891, 968-974; See Richard J. Ofshe & Richard J. Leo, *The*  
 31 *Decision to Confess Falsely: Rational Choice and Irrational Action*, 74 DENV. U. L. REV. 979, 984  
 32 (1997). Many of the wrongful convictions overturned in recent decades involved psychological,  
 33 as opposed to physical, coercion. Over time, concerns have grown that psychological techniques  
 34 can manipulate suspects into falsely confessing. For an overview, see RICHARD A. LEO, *POLICE*  
 35 *INTERROGATION AND AMERICAN JUSTICE* 181 (2008).

36 False confessions are an important cause of wrongful convictions. False confessions have  
 37 led to over 60 exonerations in cases involving DNA testing and many more cases not relying upon



1 DNA evidence to exonerate. The individuals often spent a decade or more in prison before  
2 obtaining their exoneration. Almost without exception, those exonerees were said to have  
3 confessed in detail, offering inside information that only the culprit could have known; in  
4 retrospect, it is evident that their confession statements were contaminated and that law  
5 enforcement must have disclosed those details. See Brandon L. Garrett, *Confession Contamination*  
6 *Revisited*, 101 VA. L. REV. 395 (2015). In addition, the National Registry of Exonerations includes  
7 over 200 exonerations that involved confessions, the majority of which were non-DNA  
8 exonerations. The National Registry of Exonerations, Joint Project of Mich. Law & Nw. Law,  
9 Exonerations by Contributing Factor, at [https://www.law.umich.edu/special/exoneration/Pages/](https://www.law.umich.edu/special/exoneration/Pages/ExonerationsContribFactorsByCrime.aspx)  
10 [ExonerationsContribFactorsByCrime.aspx](https://www.law.umich.edu/special/exoneration/Pages/ExonerationsContribFactorsByCrime.aspx). Agencies have had substantial civil-damages awards  
11 imposed in cases in which contaminated confessions led to wrongful convictions. See, e.g.,  
12 *Warney v. State*, 16 N.Y.3d 428 (N.Y. 2011); Jerry Markon, *Wrongfully Jailed Man Wins Suit*,  
13 WASHINGTON POST, May 6, 2006, B01.

14 Researchers have documented distinct types of false confessions caused by psychological  
15 coercion. Some individuals comply due to pressure placed on them by officers. Others internalize  
16 what they are told and actually become convinced of their guilt even though they are innocent.  
17 Saul M. Kassin & Katharine L. Kiechel, *The Social Psychology of False Confessions: Compliance,*  
18 *Internalization, and Confabulation*, 7 PSYCHOL. SCI. 125 (1996). Researchers also have raised  
19 concerns that innocent individuals face special risks during interrogations. Saul M. Kassin, *On the*  
20 *Psychology of Confessions: Does Innocence Put Innocents at Risk?*, 60 AM. PSYCHOL. 215, 216,  
21 223 (2005) (describing how innocent individuals may place more trust that law enforcement will  
22 ultimately clear them and as a result, place themselves at risk of falsely confessing). Researchers  
23 have described the dangers of false confessions for many years. GISLI H. GUDJONSSON, *THE*  
24 *PSYCHOLOGY OF INTERROGATIONS AND CONFESSIONS* 523-537 (2003).

25 An additional problem is that even false confessions can appear to be extremely reliable,  
26 and as a result, they can play a powerful role in criminal cases. Brandon L. Garrett, *The Substance*  
27 *of False Confessions*, 62 STAN. L. REV. 1051, 1084 (2010). Confession evidence is extremely  
28 compelling before a jury. In well-known cases, jurors have convicted individuals even despite  
29 DNA testing that excluded them, on the strength of confession statements. *Id.* The power of  
30 confession evidence may be so strong that it also enhances perceptions of the strength of other  
31 evidence in a case. Jeff Kukucka & Saul M. Kassin, *Do Confessions Taint Perceptions of*  
32 *Handwriting Evidence? An Empirical Test of the Forensic Confirmation Bias*, AM. PSYCHOLOGIST  
33 (2014). Indeed, once a confession has been secured—false or otherwise—officers may cease  
34 investigating other leads and attorneys may be highly motivated to secure a plea.

35 Constitutional rulings do not provide significant protection against false confessions; they  
36 largely do not even address the reliability of confession statements. Rather, they try to rule out  
37 police questioning practices that implicate concerns with coercion as well as with legitimacy. See,  
38 e.g., *Brown v. Mississippi*, 297 U.S. 278 (1936); *Haynes v. Washington*, 373 U.S. 503 (1963);  
39 *Frazier v. Cupp*, 394 U.S. 731 (1969). Nonetheless, the concern with accuracy has been present in  
40 some rulings as well. In its ruling in *Miranda v. Arizona*, the U.S. Supreme Court cited the well-

1 known false-confession case of George Whitmore and how he had confessed due to  
 2 “brainwashing, hypnosis, [and] fright.” 384 U.S. 436, 455 n.24 (1966). More recently, the Supreme  
 3 Court has cited examples of false confessions uncovered by DNA testing in capital cases. *Atkins*  
 4 *v. Virginia*, 536 U.S. 304, 320 n.25 (2002) (“in recent years a disturbing number of inmates on  
 5 death row . . . [including] at least one mentally retarded person [Earl Washington, Jr.] who  
 6 unwittingly confessed to a crime that he did not commit.”).

7 It has been common among American police interrogators to use the “Reid method,” see  
 8 FRED E. INBAU ET AL., *CRIMINAL INTERROGATION AND CONFESSIONS* 347 (5th ed. 2013). That  
 9 method emphasizes a set of psychological techniques designed to confront and accuse a suspect,  
 10 and then maximize the pressure placed on the suspect to incriminate themselves, while appearing  
 11 to minimize the consequences for the suspect in doing so. The techniques tend to rely on “some  
 12 form of deception,” ranging from “rationalization” of the person’s actions to outright “evidence  
 13 fabrication.” Christopher Slobogin, *Manipulation of Suspects and Unrecorded Questioning: After*  
 14 *50 Years of Miranda Jurisprudence, Still Two (or Maybe Three) Burning Issues*, 97 BOSTON U. L.  
 15 REV. 1157, 1161 (2017).

16 However, these traditional interrogation methods have been evolving in the United States.  
 17 A leading interrogation training provider, Wicklander-Zulaski & Associates, no longer trains on  
 18 the Reid Method. Eli Hager, *A Major Player in Law Enforcement Says it Will Stop Using a Method*  
 19 *that is Linked to False Confessions*, Marshall Project, March 9, 2017. The federal High-Value  
 20 Detainee Interrogation Group (HIG), which includes members of the Central Intelligence Agency,  
 21 Federal Bureau of Investigation, and other federal law enforcement, has developed interrogation  
 22 best practices that similarly focus on questioning that is designed to build rapport and “draw out  
 23 what the detainee knows as opposed to only focusing on the intelligence the team would like to  
 24 obtain.” High-Value Detainee Interrogation Group, *Interrogation Best Practices 2* (August 26,  
 25 2016), at <https://www.fbi.gov/file-repository/hig-report-august-2016.pdf/view>. Police  
 26 departments, including in Dallas, Philadelphia, and Los Angeles, have begun to use the approach  
 27 developed by the HIG.

28 In response to concerns about several high-profile false confessions, U.K. interrogators  
 29 also developed an alternative: the PEACE model (for Planning and Preparation; Engage and  
 30 Explain; Account; Closure; and Evaluation). Slobogin, *supra*, at 1161-1162. The PEACE  
 31 interrogation methods used in the United Kingdom, and now in Australia, Denmark, New Zealand,  
 32 Norway, Sweden, and other countries, adopts an “investigative interviewing” approach, geared  
 33 toward obtaining rapport with a suspect and maximizing the amount of information gathered from  
 34 that suspect. See, e.g., JAMES TRAINUM, *HOW THE POLICE GENERATE FALSE CONFESSIONS* 218  
 35 (2016). Christian A. Messner, Christopher E. Kelly & Skye A. Woestehoff, *Improving*  
 36 *Effectiveness of Suspect Interrogations*, 11 ANN. REV. L. & SOC. SCI. 211, 213 (2015), citing John  
 37 Baldwin, *Police Interview Techniques: Establishing Truth or Proof?*, 33 BRIT. J. CRIMINOL. 325  
 38 (1993); REBECCA MILNE & RAY BULL, *INVESTIGATIVE INTERVIEWING: PSYCHOLOGY & PRACTICE*  
 39 (1999); Thomas M. Williamson, *From Interrogation to Investigative Interviewing: Strategic*  
 40 *Trends in Police Questioning*, 20 PSYCHONOMIC BULL. REV. 812 (1993). This model is

1 characterized by the use of noncoercive tactics and open-ended questions. Colin Clarke & Rebecca  
2 Milne, *National Evaluation of the PEACE Investigative Interviewing Course*, Police Research  
3 Award Scheme (2001); Stavroula Soukara et al., *What Really Happens in Police Interviews of*  
4 *Suspects? Tactics and Confessions*, 15 PSYCHOL. CRIME & L. 492 (2009); David W. Walsh &  
5 Rebecca Milne, *Keeping the PEACE? A Study of Investigative Interviewing Practices in the Public*  
6 *Sector*, 13 LEGAL & CRIMINOL. PSYCHOL. 39 (2008). Other alternatives include the approach  
7 developed for counterterrorism efforts by the High-Value Detainee Interrogation Group Research  
8 Unit. Slobogin, *supra*.

9 This Section does not require that agencies adopt any one model of police interrogation,  
10 but it rejects the most coercive and deceptive techniques and discourages using methods that have  
11 been shown to produce false confessions. The larger thrust of these Principles, that agencies should  
12 be most concerned with obtaining accurate information in a fair and dignified manner, is more  
13 compatible with training and processes used by approaches, such as the PEACE approach, that  
14 depart from the Reid method.

15 Related to, but separate and apart from, the accuracy-based concern with false confessions,  
16 the legitimacy and dignitary concern with physical and psychological coercion is equally important  
17 and longstanding. Torture, or use of physical force to secure information from a person, has long  
18 been forbidden under the Fifth Amendment. As the U.S. Supreme Court has put it in its rulings,  
19 the Fifth Amendment's self-incrimination clause reflects the view that: "important human values  
20 are sacrificed where an agency of the government, in the course of securing a conviction, wrings  
21 a confession out of an accused against his will." *Blackburn v. Alabama*, 361 U.S. 199, 206-207  
22 (1960). The concern with coercion dates back long before the Fifth Amendment was drafted.  
23 Justice Hugo Black famously wrote that "The testimony of centuries, in governments of varying  
24 kinds over populations of different races and beliefs, stood as proof that physical and mental torture  
25 and coercion had brought about the tragically unjust sacrifices of some who were the noblest and  
26 most useful of their generations." *Chambers v. Florida*, 309 U.S. 227, 237-238 (1940). The 1931  
27 National Commission of Law Observance and Enforcement examined the problem of police use  
28 of torture and noted that: "the third degree is especially used against the poor and uninfluential."  
29 IV Nat'l Comm'n on L. Observance & Enf't, Report on Prosecution 159 (1931). The U.S. Supreme  
30 Court has long been concerned with the state using interrogations to coerce individuals "whether  
31 by physical force or by psychological domination . . ." *In re Gault*, 387 U.S. 1, 47 (1967).  
32 Legitimacy concerns are also raised by use of deception, which may undercut credibility of law  
33 enforcement in other contexts. Margaret L. Paris, *Lying to Ourselves*, 76 OR. L. REV. 817 (1997).

34 However, constitutional rulings do not address adequately the concern with psychological  
35 coercion during police questioning, and, as a result, these Principles directly counsel minimizing  
36 coercion rather than relying on language in constitutional rulings. The U.S. Supreme Court's Fifth  
37 Amendment "voluntariness" test provides a remedy for undue coercion during custodial  
38 interrogations. *Arizona v. Fulminante*, 499 U.S. 279, 303 (1991). However, that test is multi-  
39 factored and highly case-specific, and it does not provide clear guidance to law enforcement. Eve  
40 Brensike Primus, *The Future of Confession Law: Toward Rules for the Voluntariness Test*, 114

1 MICH. L. REV. 1, 3 (2015). Courts have upheld, for example, extremely lengthy interrogations.  
2 Welsh S. White, *What Is an Involuntary Confession Now?*, 50 RUTGERS L. REV. 2001, 2046-2047  
3 (1998). Courts have found as voluntary confessions that are now known to have been false. Garrett,  
4 *The Substance of False Confessions*, supra; Drizin & Leo, supra, at 944-945, 963-971. Indeed, the  
5 Supreme Court has itself noted that the voluntariness test does not provide clear guidance to law  
6 enforcement. *Dickerson v. United States*, 530 U.S. 428, 444 (2000) (“[T]he totality-of-the-  
7 circumstances test . . . is more difficult than *Miranda* for law enforcement officers to conform to,  
8 and for courts to apply in a consistent manner.”); *Haynes v. Washington*, 373 U.S. 503, 515  
9 (1963) (“The line between proper and permissible police conduct and techniques and methods  
10 offensive to due process is, at best, a difficult one to draw”). For that reason, these Principles  
11 address the problem of undue coercion directly, and without relying on the constitutional  
12 voluntariness test.

13 Whether a person is deemed to be in “custody” while being “interrogated” can trigger a  
14 range of constitutional protections, such as the Fifth Amendment right to remain silent and the  
15 Sixth Amendment right to counsel. One goal of these Principles is to move beyond the unwieldy  
16 concept of “custody.”

17 The test for whether a person is deemed in custody is not clear. The U.S. Supreme Court  
18 recently explained that: “As used in our *Miranda* case law, ‘custody’ is a term of art that specifies  
19 circumstances that are thought generally to present a serious danger of coercion.” *Howes v. Fields*,  
20 132 S. Ct. 1181, 1189-1190 (2012). Yet, despite this seeming connection to coercion, the Court’s  
21 cases often are quite divorced from it. In some cases, the Court engages in a formalistic inquiry  
22 about whether it believes a person would feel free to leave, even if the questioning took place  
23 behind closed doors at a police station. See *Oregon v. Mathiason*, 429 U.S. 492 (1977) (“Nor is  
24 the requirement of warnings to be imposed simply because the questioning takes place in the  
25 station house, or because the questioned person is one whom the police suspect.”). At other times,  
26 the Court relies on an objective “totality of the circumstances” test. *Howes*, 132 S. Ct. at 1189-  
27 1910. The Court has held that relevant factors include: “the location of the questioning, statements  
28 made during the interview, the presence or absence of physical restraints during the questioning,  
29 and the release of the interviewee at the end of the questioning.” *Id.* The individual characteristics  
30 of the person being questioned are also relevant, including whether the person is a juvenile. *J.D.B.*  
31 *v. North Carolina*, 564 U.S. 261 (2011). In other cases, the Court has held that age and experience  
32 with law enforcement were not relevant circumstances. *Yarborough v. Alvarado*, 541 U.S. 652  
33 (2004). The Court has held that questioning during traffic stops does not constitute custodial  
34 interrogation. *Berkemer v. McCarty*, 468 U.S. 420, 437-438 (1984). Yet, the Court also has said  
35 that people who are in prison are not necessarily in “custody” when questioned. *Howes*, 132 S. Ct.  
36 at 1190 (reasoning that “questioning a person who is already serving a prison term does not  
37 generally involve the shock that very often accompanies arrest.”).

38 As the language from those tests and the outcomes in those cases suggest, the U.S. Supreme  
39 Court’s Fifth Amendment “totality of the circumstances” test does not provide very useful  
40 guidance to law enforcement. The distinctions set out in the cases are not intuitive. They create

1 opportunities for gaming the system, rather than a clear set of best practices for interviews and  
2 interrogations. These rulings also suggest that absent custody, no regulation or guidance is  
3 necessary for police. Thus, in rulings such as *Salinas v. Texas*, 133 S. Ct. 2174 (2013), the U.S.  
4 Supreme Court has been highly tolerant of police questioning of individuals deemed not to be in  
5 “custody,” without providing warnings under *Miranda* and the accompanying constitutional  
6 protections. Informal questioning is a valuable and important practice, but, like formal questioning  
7 of suspects, it too should be governed by careful principles and policy.

8 The rulings in constitutional litigation are geared toward determining whether evidence  
9 will be admissible at a criminal trial, are not focused primarily on what is desirable as a matter of  
10 sound policy and practice, and often have very little to do with reliability or coercion. These  
11 Principles, by contrast, encourage officers to follow procedures designed to ensure that rights are  
12 respected and reliable information is obtained, no matter what the interview or interrogation  
13 setting. Constitutional law sets a floor and must be followed, but these Principles are intended to  
14 address concerns, often neglected by constitutional law, regarding reliable confessions, statements  
15 obtained with minimal coercion, and ensuring legitimacy and treatment of individuals with dignity.

## 16 § 11.02. Recording of Police Questioning

17 **Written policies should set out the procedures for the recording of questioning, and**  
18 **for the disclosure and the retention of recorded evidence, and should provide that:**

19 **(a) absent exigent circumstances, officers should record questioning of**  
20 **suspects in its entirety;**

21 **(b) officers should record questioning of witnesses whenever feasible; and**

22 **(c) in situations in which recording is not conducted, officers should document**  
23 **questioning, taking notes contemporaneously when possible, and memorializing**  
24 **conversations immediately thereafter.**

### 25 **Comment:**

26 *a. Recording questioning of suspects.* A suspect, or a person who police have reason to  
27 believe committed a crime being investigated, may be questioned in a manner that is inherently  
28 more accusatory and coercive than the manner in which police question a witness, or a person who  
29 police believe has information about a crime. Police may not know whether a person is a witness  
30 or also a suspect when they initiate questioning, and when in doubt, they should therefore err on  
31 the side of providing the procedures available to suspects. Unless exigent circumstances make it  
32 impossible, questioning of suspects should be recorded, in its entirety, including the provision and  
33 waiver of *Miranda* rights. This is essential to ensure a complete record and to prevent any doubt

1 about what happened outside the record. Video recording is preferable. Exigent circumstances  
2 might include equipment failure combined with a pressing public-safety need to conduct  
3 questioning without delay. Recording may be less feasible in the field, though body-worn cameras  
4 may be available for recording purposes. Cost considerations also are relevant, both for police and  
5 legal actors, particularly if recording is extended beyond questioning of suspects.

6         Suspects should be told that they are being recorded. For some suspects who are not willing  
7 to speak if recorded, procedures should make available the option of not recording or using  
8 methods to redact video or audio to mask the identity of the witness. Policy and procedure should  
9 make available and define such special precautions to officers. Video cameras should be positioned  
10 so that the field of view includes both the officer and the person being questioned. Policies, at the  
11 agency level or preferably at the state level, should provide procedures for recording  
12 interrogations. Such policies should provide clear instructions for stopping and starting the  
13 recording. Governments should make resources available to agencies to purchase and maintain  
14 equipment needed to record the questioning of individuals.

15         *b. Recording questioning of witnesses.* Questioning of witnesses may sometimes be  
16 conducted in less formal settings, but such questioning should be recorded whenever feasible.  
17 Witnesses should be told that they are being recorded. As with suspects, there may witnesses who  
18 are not willing to speak if recorded and there may be safety and security concerns that counsel  
19 redacting video or audio to mask the identity of the witness. Policy and procedure should make  
20 available and define such special precautions to officers. When such a recording is not conducted,  
21 officers should take notes contemporaneously to provide as accurate and timely a record as  
22 possible of what transpired. If there is not a recording, any reporting or memorialization of those  
23 conversations similarly should occur immediately after questioning.

24         *c. Disclosure.* Agency policies should set out rules for disclosure of recordings to lawyers  
25 in discovery and for storage of archived records.

26         *d. Retention.* As discussed elsewhere in these Principles, clear policies should set out the  
27 rules for retention of recorded statements. Such evidence should be retained in a manner designed  
28 to be usable in the future, and should not be dependent on technology that is proprietary or likely  
29 to be obsolete in a way that might hamper future access.

**REPORTERS' NOTES**

1           A large body of high-profile exonerations of innocent persons have occurred in cases in  
2 which false confessions were obtained during interrogations that were not recorded. Absent a  
3 recording, officers asserted that suspects had volunteered “inside” information or details about a  
4 crime that only the culprit and the investigators had known. With the benefit of DNA testing, the  
5 public learned years later that the suspects were in fact innocent and that such details must have  
6 come from police. The problem is known as “confession contamination.” BRANDON L. GARRETT,  
7 *CONVICING THE INNOCENT: WHERE CRIMINAL PROSECUTIONS GO WRONG* 21-44 (2011).

8           Recording police questioning assists law-enforcement agencies and furthers the important  
9 goal of documenting evidence and ensuring the conviction of those who commit wrongdoing. Orin  
10 Kerr, *Fourth Amendment Seizures of Computer Data*, 119 *YALE L. J.* 700, 715 (2010) (“To create  
11 a record of the event, the officer might record a suspect’s confession.”).

12           Video recordings also empower judges to better assess the reliability of interrogation  
13 evidence, both to reject false claims of police overreaching and to examine potential wrongful  
14 convictions. Paul Cassell, *Protecting the Innocent from False Confessions and Lost Confessions—*  
15 *and from Miranda*, 88 *J. CRIM. L. & CRIMINOLOGY* 497, 503 (Winter 1998); Richard A. Leo,  
16 Peter J. Neufeld, Steven A. Drizin & Andrew E. Taslitz, *Promoting Accuracy in The Use of*  
17 *Confession Evidence: An Argument for Pretrial Reliability Assessments to Prevent Wrongful*  
18 *Convictions*, 85 *TEMP. L. REV.* 759 (2013). Agencies have reported positive experiences with  
19 recording interrogations because it provides powerful documentation that interrogations are  
20 conducted professionally and non-coercively. Thomas P. Sullivan & Andrew W. Vail,  
21 *The Consequences of Law Enforcement Officials’ Failure to Record Custodial Interviews as*  
22 *Required by Law*, 99 *J. CRIM. L. & CRIMINOL.* 215, 220-221, 228-234 (2009). Fears that “few  
23 would allow themselves to be interviewed or interrogated” if it were known that interviews and  
24 interrogations are recorded have not been realized in jurisdictions in which recording has been  
25 introduced. NATHAN J. GORDON & WILLIAM L. FLEISCHER, *ACADEMY FOR SCIENTIFIC*  
26 *INVESTIGATIVE TRAINING, EFFECTIVE INTERVIEWING & INTERROGATION TECHNIQUES* 209 (2d ed.  
27 2006). That said, some flexibility with reluctant witnesses may be important. In addition, it may  
28 be increasingly feasible to conduct video recording in the field, as body-worn cameras are utilized  
29 more widely by agencies.

30           In response to the problem of false confessions, and to better document professionally  
31 conducted questioning, law-enforcement agencies themselves have shifted to requiring recordings.  
32 Saul M. Kassin et al., *Police Interviewing and Interrogation: A Self-Report Survey of Police*  
33 *Practices and Beliefs*, 31 *LAW & HUM. BEHAV.* 381, 382 (2007). Most prominently, videotaping  
34 evidence during interviews and interrogations is increasingly ubiquitous. Doing so provides a  
35 complete record of who said what during an interrogation. Richard A. Leo, *False Confessions:*  
36 *Causes, Consequences, and Implications*, 37 *J. AM. ACAD. PSYCHIATRY & L.* 332, 337 (2009)  
37 (“Interrogators help create the false confession by pressuring the suspect to accept a particular  
38 account and by suggesting facts of the crime to him, thereby contaminating the suspect’s  
39 postadmission narrative . . . . If the entire interrogation is captured on audio or video recording,

1 then it may be possible to trace, step by step, how and when the interrogator implied or suggested  
 2 the correct answers for the suspect to incorporate into his postadmission narrative.”); see also  
 3 Christopher Slobogin, *Toward Taping*, 1 OHIO ST. J. CRIM. L. 309, 311 (2003) (arguing that due  
 4 process requires recording interrogations).

5 State statutes increasingly have required recording at least some categories of police  
 6 questioning. ANN. CAL. PENAL CODE § 859.5 (West 2014) (requiring recordings for juveniles  
 7 suspected of murder; exception for “exigent circumstances”); CONN. GEN. STAT. § 54-10 (West  
 8 2014) (requiring recordings for suspects of capital or class A or B felonies; statements made during  
 9 or after unrecorded interrogations presumptively inadmissible); D.C. CODE § 5-116.01 (2009)  
 10 (requiring police to record all custodial investigations); 725 ILL. COMP. STAT. ANN. 5/103-2.1  
 11 (West 2009) (requiring police to record interrogations in all homicide cases); 705 ILL. COMP. STAT.  
 12 ANN. 401.5(b-5) (expanding range of felonies for which recording is required for juvenile  
 13 suspects); 725 ILL. COMP. STAT. ANN. 103-2.1(b-5) (expanding range of felonies for which  
 14 recording is required for adult suspects); ME. REV. STAT. ANN. tit. 25, § 2803-B (2009) (mandating  
 15 recording “interviews of suspects in serious crimes”); MD. CODE ANN., CRIM. PROC. § 2-402  
 16 (2009) (requiring that law enforcement make “reasonable efforts” to record certain felony  
 17 interrogations “whenever possible”); MICH. COMP. LAWS ANN. §§ 763.8, 763.9 (West 2013)  
 18 (requiring recordings for individuals suspected of major felonies); MO. REV. STAT. ch. 590.700  
 19 (Vernon 2013) (requiring recording for certain felonies); MONT. CODE ANN. § 46-4-408 (West  
 20 2009) (requiring the recording of all custodial interrogations); NEB. REV. STAT. ANN. §§ 29-4503,  
 21 29-4504 (West 2008) (requiring recording for interrogations relating to certain offenses and  
 22 providing for jury instructions in the event of failure to do so); N.M. STAT. ANN. § 29-1-16 (West  
 23 2006) (requiring recordings of all custodial interrogations); N.C. GEN. STAT. § 15A-211 (2009)  
 24 (requiring complete electronic recording of custodial interrogations in homicide cases); OHIO REV.  
 25 CODE ANN. § 2933.81 (Baldwin 2010) (providing for a presumption of voluntariness for recorded  
 26 statements made in response to interrogation); OR. REV. STAT. § 133.400 (West 2009) (requiring  
 27 the recording of interrogations of suspects for aggravated murder, crimes requiring imposition of  
 28 a mandatory minimum sentence, or adult prosecution of juvenile offenders); WIS. STAT. ANN.  
 29 §§ 968.073, 972.115 (West 2009) (requiring recording of felony interrogations and permitting jury  
 30 instruction if interrogation not recorded); 13 V.S.A. § 5581 (2014) (requiring recording of entire  
 31 interrogations in homicide and sexual-assault investigations, with a burden on prosecutors to show  
 32 by a preponderance of the evidence that an exception justified failure to comply); see also TEX.  
 33 CODE CRIM. PROC. ANN. art. 38.22, § 3 (Vernon 2007) (rendering unrecorded oral statements  
 34 inadmissible unless the statements contain “assertions of facts or circumstances that are found to  
 35 be true . . .”).

36 Many state courts also have required recordings of police questioning. See *Stephan v. State*,  
 37 711 P.2d 1156, 1158 (Alaska 1985) (“[A]n unexcused failure to electronically record a  
 38 custodial interrogation conducted in a place of detention violates a suspect’s right to due process.  
 39 . . .”); *State v. Hajtic*, 724 N.W.2d 449, 456 (Iowa 2006) (“[E]lectronic recording, particularly  
 40 videotaping, of custodial interrogations should be encouraged, and we take this opportunity to do



1 so.”); *State v. Scales*, 518 N.W.2d 587, 592 (Minn. 1994) (“[A]ll questioning shall be  
2 electronically recorded where feasible and must be recorded when questioning occurs at a place of  
3 detention.”); *State v. Cook*, 847 A.2d 530, 547 (N.J. 2004) (“[W]e will establish a committee to  
4 study and make recommendations on the use of electronic recording of  
5 custodial interrogations.”); *In re Jerrell C.J.*, 699 N.W.2d 110, 123 (Wis. 2005) (“[W]e exercise  
6 our supervisory power to require that all custodial interrogation of juveniles in future cases be  
7 electronically recorded where feasible, and without exception when questioning occurs at a place  
8 of detention.”); see also *Commonwealth v. DiGiambattista*, 813 N.E.2d 516, 535 (Mass.  
9 2004) (allowing defense to point out failure to record interrogation and calling unrecorded  
10 admissions “less reliable”); *State v. Barnett*, 789 A.2d 629, 663 (N.H. 2001) (“immediately  
11 following the valid waiver of a defendant's *Miranda* rights, a tape recorded interrogation will not  
12 be admitted into evidence unless the statement is recorded in its entirety”); N.J. Supreme Court  
13 Rule 3:17 (following *Cook*, requiring electronic recording of custodial interrogations).

14 The recording of police questioning is required or recommended in many respected  
15 quarters. The U.S. Department of Justice has a memorandum setting out a policy for recording  
16 interrogations. See Memorandum from James M. Cole, Deputy Attorney Gen., Dep’t of Justice,  
17 Policy Concerning Electronic Recording of Statements 1 (May 12, 2014),  
18 <http://archive.azcentral.com/ic/pdf/DOJ-policy-electronic-recording.pdf> (creating a presumption  
19 that statements by individuals in federal custody, following arrest but prior to a first court  
20 appearance, will be electronically recorded). The International Association of Chiefs of Police  
21 recommends recording “all interviews involving major crimes” and prefers video recordings.  
22 International Association of Chiefs of Police, National Summit on Wrongful Convictions:  
23 Building a Systemic Approach to Prevent Wrongful Convictions 18 (August 2013); see also  
24 International Association of Chiefs of Police, Interviewing and Interrogating Juveniles Model  
25 Policy (May 2012); International Association of Chiefs of Police, Electronic Recording of  
26 Interrogations and Confessions Model Policy (February 2006). Scholars have advocated  
27 videotaping interrogations for some time. Andrew E. Taslitz, *High Expectations and Some*  
28 *Wounded Hopes: The Policy and Politics of a Uniform Statute on Videotaping Custodial*  
29 *Interrogations*, 7 NW. J. L. & SOC. POL’Y 400, 427 (2012); Richard A. Leo et al., *Bringing*  
30 *Reliability Back In: False Confessions and Legal Safeguards in the Twenty-First Century*, 2006  
31 WIS. L. REV. 479, 520-535.

32 Although these Principles take no position on the admissibility of unrecorded statements,  
33 others have. The Alaska Supreme Court has ruled that judges should suppress unrecorded  
34 statements unless failure to record is excused by good cause. *Stephan v. State*, 711 P.2d 1156  
35 (Alaska 1985). The Restatement of the Law, Children and the Law, calls for the exclusion of  
36 unrecorded statements in court. RESTATEMENT OF THE LAW, CHILDREN AND THE LAW § 14.23,  
37 Reporters’ Notes (AM. LAW INST., Tentative Draft No. 1, 2018) (citing authority including *State*  
38 *v. Scales*, 518 N.W.2d 587, 592-593 (Minn. 1994); *In re Dionicia M.*, 791 N.W.2d 236, 241 (Wis.  
39 2010); *State v. Barnett*, 789 A.2d 629 (N.H. 2001); IND. R. EVID. 617; WIS. STAT. ANN. §§ 938.195,  
40 938.31; WIS. STAT. ANN. §§ 968.073, 972.115; TEX. FAM. CODE ANN. § 51.095; MONT. CODE

1 ANN. § 46-4-409(1); 725 ILL. COMP. STAT. ANN. 5/103-2.1 (same)). See also Thomas Sullivan,  
 2 *Video Recording of Custodial Interrogation: Everybody Wins*, 95 J. CRIM. L. & CRIMINOL. 1127  
 3 (2005) (proposed model statute presumptively excluding unrecorded interrogation statements).  
 4 Many state statutes also retain exceptions for exigent circumstances, such as for equipment  
 5 malfunctions. See, e.g., N.C. GEN. STAT. ANN. § 15A-211(e); VT. STAT. ANN. tit. 13, § 5585(c)(1);  
 6 N.J. CT. R. 3:17(b); IND. R. EVID. 617(a); WIS. STAT. ANN. § 972.115(2)(a); MONT. CODE ANN.  
 7 § 46-4-409(1). Others create an exception for a spontaneous statement that could not be recorded  
 8 in time. See, e.g., ARK. R. CRIM. P. 4.7(b)(2); CONN. GEN. STAT. ANN. § 54-10(e); 725 ILL. COMP.  
 9 STAT. ANN. 5/103-2.1(b-10); IND. R. EVID. 617(a); N.C. GEN. STAT. ANN. § 15A-211(g); N.J. CT.  
 10 R. 3:17(b); N.M. STAT. ANN. § 29-1-16(C); MONT. CODE ANN. § 46-4-409(1); MO. ANN. STAT.  
 11 § 590.700(3); OR. REV. STAT. ANN. § 133.400(2); TEX. CRIM. PROC. CODE ANN. art. 38.22, § 5;  
 12 WIS. STAT. ANN. § 972.115(2)(a). Some statutes include a “good cause” provision like that stated  
 13 in this Section. See, e.g., N.M. STAT. ANN. § 29-1-16(F); N.C. GEN. STAT. ANN. § 15A-211(e); OR.  
 14 REV. STAT. ANN. § 133.400(2); WIS. STAT. ANN. § 968.073(2). This Section also adopts the  
 15 approach of Restatement of the Law, Children and the Law § 14.23 (Am. Law Inst., Tentative  
 16 Draft No. 1, 2018), except that it extends the same rule to adult interrogations and not just to  
 17 juvenile interrogations.

18 Through their grant programs, governments should make resources available to agencies  
 19 to purchase and maintain the equipment needed to record questioning of individuals. The  
 20 equipment needed to record police questioning is increasingly inexpensive; however, resources  
 21 also should be made available to facilitate the storage of data from recordings, as well as to  
 22 reproduce those recordings in a form that is easily accessible to attorneys and judges.

### 23 § 11.03. Informing Persons of Their Rights Prior to Questioning

24 **Officers should inform suspects of their right to refrain from answering and their**  
 25 **right to counsel, and ensure that any waivers of those rights are meaningfully made. Any**  
 26 **invocation of rights must be respected, and if there is any uncertainty as to whether rights**  
 27 **are being invoked, officers should take the time to clarify that. Waivers of rights should be**  
 28 **documented using appropriate agency forms, and must be recorded in accordance with**  
 29 **§ 11.02.**

#### 30 **Comment:**

31 *a. Constitutional rights.* The Fifth and Sixth Amendments to the U.S. Constitution require  
 32 that officers provide warnings to suspects in custody before questioning them, and the U.S.  
 33 Supreme Court has held that no statement can be admitted unless the suspect has waived those  
 34 rights. However, *Miranda* protections that apply during police questioning have been undermined

1 in a range of Supreme Court decisions. As a result, this Section adopts the view that if  
2 constitutional safeguards are to be meaningful, care must be taken when securing waivers of rights.

3 *b. Best practices.* When in doubt about whether constitutional law requires obtaining a  
4 waiver or not, it is the better practice to err on the side of providing warnings, and clearly  
5 documenting any waivers of rights by an individual, *before* an interview or interrogation  
6 commences. Officers must ensure that any waiver of rights is voluntary, well-informed, and  
7 understood. Officers must make the meaning of the rights clear to suspects. In doing so, additional  
8 warnings may be necessary. Officers must take special care when questioning individuals who are  
9 members of vulnerable populations. See § 11.05 (vulnerable populations). After providing a  
10 standard statement of available rights, officers must ask questions to secure an affirmative waiver  
11 of rights. If a suspect invokes his or her rights, officers must respect that invocation promptly. Any  
12 ambiguity concerning an invocation should be promptly clarified to ensure that the rights of a  
13 person are carefully respected.

14 *c. Right to counsel.* Under the Fifth and Sixth Amendments of the U.S. Constitution, a  
15 person has the right to request an attorney during an interrogation. Agencies must take measures  
16 to ascertain if an individual already is represented by counsel, and if so to cease questioning in  
17 order to ensure that counsel is notified or present. If questioning a person who has, or has requested,  
18 counsel, officers must document and—when possible—obtain written verification that the person  
19 initiated the communication despite being aware of the right to have counsel present.

20 *d. Documentation.* Officers should record the process of informing persons of their rights,  
21 the persons' responses, and any subsequent questioning, as described in § 11.02.

### REPORTERS' NOTES

22 This Section emphasizes that agencies must ensure that suspects only waive their rights  
23 after a meaningful opportunity to consider whether or not to do so. The focus here is not on  
24 revisiting constitutional-law requirements, but rather on making them meaningful by ensuring that  
25 all suspects, including those of varying ages, learning ability, mental health, and language skills,  
26 can understand what is transpiring, and exercise free will as to whether they wish to be questioned.

27 The U.S. Supreme Court ruled in several cases regarding how a waiver should be obtained  
28 and the need to ensure that a waiver is informed. For example, while the Court has said that “[t]he  
29 main purpose of *Miranda* is to ensure that an accused is advised of and understands the right to  
30 remain silent and the right to counsel,” the Court has held that a waiver of rights may be “implied”  
31 from silence, even after several hours of a suspect remaining silent in the face of police  
32 questioning. *Berguis v. Thompkins*, 560 U.S. 370, 383 (2010). In addition, the Court has permitted

1 “a good-faith *Miranda* mistake” to excuse an officer’s failure to provide the warnings, in a  
 2 departure from its rules that typically impose an objective standard of care. *Missouri v. Seibert*,  
 3 542 U.S. 600, 611 (2004) (plurality opinion). Such standards and distinctions are complex and  
 4 have been criticized as not faithful to the *Miranda* ruling itself. Barry Friedman, *The Wages of*  
 5 *Stealth Overruling (with Particular Attention to Miranda v. Arizona)*, 99 GEO. L. J. 1 (2010). In  
 6 any event, these rulings are not intended to define a comprehensive set of best practices for law  
 7 enforcement. That makes it all the more important that agencies ensure that officers take care to  
 8 inform suspects of their rights to not answer questions and to counsel.

9 It is important to ensure that if someone is a suspect, that person is advised of his or her  
 10 rights in a clear and careful fashion, the process is documented, and assertions of rights are  
 11 respected. Agencies should err on the side of advising persons of the right to remain silent and of  
 12 the right to counsel. Agencies also should err on the side of notifying counsel.

13 Further, agencies should restrict the use of tactics in which waivers are not obtained  
 14 promptly and before questioning proceeds. The concern shared by many observers is that  
 15 interrogators deemphasize warnings, making them seem like an irrelevant afterthought, in order to  
 16 see that such warnings are disregarded by the subject. Richard A. Leo & Welsh White, *Adapting*  
 17 *to Miranda: Modern Interrogators’ Strategies for Dealing with the Obstacles Posed by Miranda*,  
 18 84 MINN. L. REV. 397-472 (1999).

#### 19 § 11.04. Conducting Police Questioning

20 **When questioning individuals, officers should:**

- 21 (a) minimize the length of questioning;
- 22 (b) avoid leading questions and disclosing details that are not publicly known;
- 23 (c) avoid threats of harm to the individual or others or, conversely, avoid
- 24 making promises of benefits to the individual or others;
- 25 (d) avoid the use of deceptive techniques that are likely to confuse or pressure
- 26 suspects in ways that might undermine accuracy of evidence;
- 27 (e) ensure the individual has access to basic physical and personal needs,
- 28 including food, water, rest, and restrooms; and
- 29 (f) not question the individual in an environment that is unduly
- 30 uncomfortable.

1 **Comment:**

2         *a. General.* As stated in § 11.01, the objectives of police questioning are to obtain accurate  
3 information while minimizing coercion and respecting legitimacy, dignity, and fairness values.  
4 Any police questioning inherently involves some degree of coercion; the goal should be to  
5 minimize such coercion in order to improve the accuracy of the information obtained and to protect  
6 the rights and the dignity of individuals. While the U.S. Constitution requires that a confession be  
7 voluntary and not overbear a person's will under the totality of the circumstances, constitutional  
8 law provides little clear guidance to officers in their conduct of questioning. This Section adopts  
9 the view that officers have an independent obligation to assess an individual and his or her potential  
10 vulnerability to both suggestion and coercion. Vulnerable populations, such as juveniles and  
11 individuals with mental-health issues, should be questioned with a greater degree of care. In  
12 addition, officers have an obligation not to engage in undue coercion during questioning, including  
13 by avoiding specific highly coercive techniques. The need to question with care and respect, and  
14 to minimize undue coercion, is still greater for witnesses who are not suspects, and who are not  
15 being accused of criminal involvement.

16         *b. Length of questioning.* Interrogations should be limited to the minimum amount of time  
17 required to obtain the information needed. In general, interviews and interrogations should not be  
18 conducted for more than three hours in one sitting. Shorter periods may be appropriate for  
19 vulnerable suspects, such as juveniles. Officers also should be attentive to the time of day and  
20 whether the suspect may be sleep deprived, as sleep deprivation creates risks for suggestiveness  
21 and false confessions.

22         *c. Avoiding the use of leading questions.* An interviewer or interrogator normally should  
23 not lead the subject, but rather should ask open-ended questions designed to elicit the most accurate  
24 and detailed information possible. An interview should be conducted in a manner that encourages  
25 a productive exchange of information. Officers should make in advance a checklist of key  
26 nonpublic facts, as part of the investigative file, which should not be disclosed during the  
27 investigation. During questioning, officers should ask only open-ended questions concerning  
28 itemized key facts that the culprit of the crime would be expected to know. Asking leading  
29 questions concerning facts that are important in an investigation can contaminate the record,  
30 because it cannot be later assessed whether the suspect could have volunteered that information.

1 Taking care to avoid disclosing those key facts will provide powerfully probative evidence of the  
2 reliability of any statement, if a person volunteers key nonpublic facts without prompting.

3 *d. Threats of harm.* Threats of harm should not be employed. For example, officers should  
4 not, in an effort to pressure a witness, threaten loss of child custody or arrest of a relative. Although  
5 some courts have admitted interrogations and confession statements despite threats of harm that  
6 officers make, such threats, whether directed at an individual or others such as family members,  
7 may cause unnecessary distress and render a statement unreliable. Because they also are implicit  
8 threats of harm if a statement is not forthcoming, promises of benefits such as leniency, to the  
9 individual or to others, also should not be used as inducements.

10 *e. Deception.* Deceptive tactics should be avoided because they both risk the accuracy of  
11 evidence and can contribute to false confessions. They also harm the legitimacy of investigations.  
12 While some types of mild use of deception, such as expressing sympathy for the defendant's  
13 situation, may not raise such concerns, officers should avoid deceptive practices that are likely to  
14 confuse or pressure suspects in ways conducive to false confessions. There are many types of lies  
15 and deception that officers have used in the past. For example, officers have used, and should not  
16 use, techniques such as false-evidence ploys or fabrication of evidence, in which officers lie to a  
17 suspect and claim to have evidence that implicates them, such as DNA evidence, confessions by  
18 others, and the like. While some courts have tolerated police use of such severe forms of deception  
19 during interrogations, such use of deception can make it far more difficult to assess the accuracy  
20 of statements made by a suspect. This is particularly the case when fictional accounts are presented  
21 and discussed in complex interchanges. Such interchanges can risk false confessions by supplying  
22 crucial investigative information to an individual during questioning, they can be highly coercive,  
23 and they also can harm legitimacy by calling into question the credibility of officers who  
24 admittedly were making false statements in an effort to elicit information.

25 *f. Deprivation of food, water, and restroom access, and other unduly coercive practices.*  
26 Deprivations of food, water, and restroom access, among many types of actions and environments  
27 that persons would find uncomfortable or harmful, are highly inappropriate. Such conduct should  
28 never occur, either for suspects or for witnesses. Persons who belong to vulnerable populations  
29 may have still greater sensitivity to environmental conditions and additional care should be taken  
30 with them. The named types of unduly coercive practices are illustrative; this Section does not

1 constitute an exhaustive list. Nor does this list highlight still more abusive and obviously coercive  
2 practices such as the use of physical torture, which should not be permitted.

### REPORTERS' NOTES

3 The U.S. Supreme Court's "voluntariness" test assessing coercion during custodial  
4 interrogations is not adequate to, or even intended to, inform sound police practices or assess or  
5 safeguard the reliability of interrogations. *Dickerson v. United States*, 530 U.S. 428 (2000). The  
6 topics addressed in this Section relate to concerns sometimes expressed by the courts, but rarely  
7 addressed in a clear way.

8 To provide an example, the U.S. Supreme Court has not regulated with any care the length  
9 of interrogations. The Court has noted that "there is no authority for the proposition" that an  
10 interrogation that is three hours long "is inherently coercive." *Berguis v. Thompkins*, 560 U.S.  
11 370, 387 (2010). In contrast, policing experts recognize that length of interrogations must be  
12 carefully monitored. Even the Inbau and Reid treatise recommends that interrogations not typically  
13 last more than three hours (now "three or four" hours). FRED E. INBAU ET AL., CRIMINAL  
14 INTERROGATION AND CONFESSIONS 422 (4th ed. 2001) The Fifth Edition states that "for the  
15 ordinary suspect" a "properly conducted interrogation that lasts 3 or 4 hours" would not constitute  
16 "duress." FRED E. INBAU ET AL., CRIMINAL INTERROGATION AND CONFESSIONS 347 (5th ed. 2013).  
17 For those reasons, this Section counsels minimizing the length of police questioning. In addition,  
18 researchers have examined how sleep deprivation caused by lengthy interrogations can increase  
19 the susceptibility of suspects to police pressure and suggestion. Mark Blagrove, *Effects of Length*  
20 *of Sleep Deprivation on Interrogative Suggestibility*, 2 J. EXPERIMENTAL PSYCHOL.: APPLIED 48,  
21 56 (1996) (studying effects of sleep deprivation).

22 This Section counsels avoiding asking leading questions. That is particularly crucial as to  
23 key pieces of information, in order to ensure that the individual can provide that information  
24 without prompting. The interrogation training materials, originally written by Fred Inbau and John  
25 Reid, and now in their Fifth Edition, are emphatic on this point: it is crucial not to ask leading  
26 questions that potentially contaminate confession evidence. Inbau and Reid have called it "highly  
27 important" to "let the confessor supply the details of the occurrence." FRED E. INBAU ET AL.,  
28 CRIMINAL INTERROGATION AND CONFESSIONS 367 (4th ed. 2001). Thus, "[w]hat should be sought  
29 particularly are facts that would only be known by the guilty person." *Id.* at 369. The current Fifth  
30 Edition slightly modifies that language but makes the point equally emphatically. See FRED E.  
31 INBAU ET AL., CRIMINAL INTERROGATION AND CONFESSIONS 315, 355 (5th ed. 2011) ("It is highly  
32 important . . . that the investigator let the confessor supply the details of the occurrence, and to this  
33 end, the investigator should avoid or at least minimize the use of leading questions" and "the lead  
34 investigator should decide and document on the case folder what information will be kept secret.").  
35 A further best practice involves holding back key facts and ensuring that they are carefully  
36 documented in the officers' files as important and not to be released to the public. As noted, if  
37 those facts are then disclosed by the suspect voluntarily and without prompting, the statement can  
38 provide particularly probative evidence of guilt. See also Brandon L. Garrett, *The Substance of*

1 *False Confessions*, 62 STAN. L. REV. 1051, 1066-1067 (2010) (describing police training on  
2 avoiding contamination).

3 Use of non-leading questions to solicit information in an open-ended way is the basis for  
4 what are called Cognitive Interviewing techniques, which have been researched and found to  
5 produce improvements in the recollection of witnesses. The Cognitive Interview was developed  
6 several decades ago by Ron Fisher and Ed Geiselman in response to requests from law enforcement  
7 for improved methods to interview witnesses. RON P. FISHER & ED R. GEISELMAN, MEMORY  
8 ENHANCING TECHNIQUES FOR INVESTIGATIVE INTERVIEWING: THE COGNITIVE INTERVIEW (1992).  
9 These techniques focus on permitting the witness to provide as much information as possible. They  
10 are based on principles designed to retrieve information from memory with completeness and  
11 accuracy. A series of laboratory experiments and field tests have documented that these techniques  
12 produce more complete and accurate information about events, whether in policing situations,  
13 eyewitness recall, or events in corporate environments. See, e.g., Amona Memom, Christian  
14 Meissner & Joanne Fraser, *The Cognitive Interview: A Meta-Analytic Review and Study Space*  
15 *Analysis of the Past 25 Years*, 16 PSYCHOL. PUB. POL'Y & L. 340 (2010). Such techniques may be  
16 far preferable not just for interrogations, but for interviews, including with witnesses who want to  
17 cooperate but who might have difficulty recalling events, as all witnesses will. Jillian R. Rivard et  
18 al., *Testing the Cognitive Interview with Professional Interviewers: Enhancing Recall of Specific*  
19 *Details of Recurring Events*, 28 APPL. COGN. PSYCHOL. 917 (2014).

20 Psychologists have long recommended that a range of unduly coercive and deceptive  
21 techniques be discontinued during interrogations. Saul M. Kassin et al., *Police-Induced*  
22 *Confessions: Risk Factors and Recommendations*, 34 LAW & HUM. BEHAV. 3 (Feb. 2010). Legal  
23 scholars also have called for the end to techniques such as deception. See Miriam S. Gohara, *A Lie*  
24 *for a Lie: False Confessions and the Case for Reconsidering the Legality of Deceptive*  
25 *Interrogation Techniques*, 33 FORDHAM URB. L. J. 791 (2006); Jennifer T. Perillo & Saul M.  
26 Kassin, *Inside Interrogation: The Lie, The Bluff, and False Confessions*, 35 LAW & HUM. BEHAV.  
27 327 (2011).

28 While interrogation techniques have long been touted as enabling officers to serve as  
29 human lie detectors, they have not been proven to do anything of the sort. Any so-called behavioral  
30 analysis or reliance on nonverbal or verbal cues from a suspect to detect deception should be used  
31 sparingly. Researchers have documented for some time that officers are not actually better than  
32 laypeople at detecting deception, and they perform no better than chance. See Saul M. Kassin &  
33 Christina T. Fong, *"I'm Innocent!": Effects of Training on Judgments of Truth and Deception in*  
34 *the Interrogation Room*, 23 LAW & HUM. BEHAV. 499, 500-501 (1999); Christian A. Meissner &  
35 Saul M. Kassin, *"He's Guilty!": Investigator Bias in Judgments of Truth and Deception*, 26 LAW  
36 & HUM. BEHAV. 469, 472 (2002).

37 These Principles emphasize, however, that in addition to the concern with the accuracy of  
38 certain highly coercive questioning methods, there is the separate concern that police questioning  
39 should ensure legitimacy, respect for dignity, and fairness.



**§ 11.05. Questioning of Members of Vulnerable Populations**

**(a) Officers should assess carefully a person’s background, age, education, language access, mental impairment, and physical condition, in order to determine vulnerability to coercion and suggestion.**

**(b) Officers should minimize the need to question vulnerable people and members of vulnerable populations, such as juveniles, people with mental illness, people with intellectual disability, and people affected by substance-related impairment. If they do question members of vulnerable populations, they should do so with minimal coercion and the utmost care.**

**(c) Hearing-impaired individuals or non-English-speaking individuals should be provided with necessary assistance or translators prior to the reading of rights or any questioning.**

**(d) A juvenile age 14 or younger may give a valid waiver of the right to counsel and the right to remain silent only after meaningful consultation with and in the presence of counsel.**

**Comment:**

*a. Vulnerable populations.* Vulnerable populations, such as juveniles, people with mental illness, people with intellectual disability, people with substance-related impairments, and hearing-impaired individuals or non-English speaking individuals, should be questioned with caution. Officers should take steps to identify such individuals. If the officer is aware that the person is a member of a vulnerable population, additional steps should be taken to explain warnings using simplified language. Agencies have adopted enhanced warnings for juveniles and other members of vulnerable populations. An officer can assess a person’s understanding of warnings simply by asking the person to repeat them in his or her own words. If a waiver occurs, any subsequent questioning should then proceed cautiously and with careful attention to these Principles, including by greatly limiting the length of the questioning.

*b. Hearing-impaired and non-English-speaking individuals.* Hearing-impaired and non-English-speaking individuals should be provided with necessary assistance or translators prior to the reading of rights or any questioning.

*c. Juveniles under age 14.* Juveniles are at heightened risk for false confessions and coercion. The U.S. Supreme Court has long observed that juveniles, due to developmental

1 immaturity, are more vulnerable to coercion. As a result, juvenile confession evidence has long  
 2 been viewed by the courts with “special caution.” In *re Gault*, 387 U.S. 1, 45 (1967). Juveniles  
 3 waive their rights at very high rates. The U.S. Supreme Court has recognized the emotional and  
 4 developmental differences between adults and juveniles, and the implications that those have for  
 5 the conduct of juvenile interviews in general and interrogations in particular. Those differences  
 6 must be taken into account when an officer conducts an interview or interrogation of a juvenile. In  
 7 addition, a substantial body of scientific research, including neurological research, documents how  
 8 juveniles, as well as young adults, are generally more impressionable and vulnerable to suggestion  
 9 than adults and may be more susceptible to intimidation by the situation and the presence of police  
 10 officers.

11 Restatement of the Law, Children and the Law § 14.22 (Am. Law Inst., Tentative Draft  
 12 No. 1, 2018) states that “a juvenile age 14 or younger can give a valid waiver of the right to counsel  
 13 and the right to remain silent only after meaningful consultation with and in the presence of  
 14 counsel.” The Restatement qualifies the statement with “[u]nless otherwise provided by statute.”  
 15 These Principles set out best practices, rather than restating existing law. Therefore, while the  
 16 Restatement acknowledges that certain statutes may disregard the child’s lack of capacity in  
 17 establishing the legal consequences of a waiver, these Principles reject such qualification. If a  
 18 juvenile is not competent to waive his or her rights, we do not believe a statute to the contrary  
 19 changes that fact.

20 *d. People with mental illness and people with intellectual disability.* While officers are not  
 21 psychiatrists or psychologists, a good-faith effort should be made to identify people with mental  
 22 illness and people with intellectual disability. Doing so may be more challenging than identifying  
 23 non-English speakers or juveniles. Officers should receive training on how to proceed when there  
 24 is evidence that an individual has mental-health issues. Officers should be encouraged to consult  
 25 with mental-health professionals before proceeding. Questioning of people with mental illness or  
 26 intellectual disability should be short, and conducted using short, simple words and sentences.  
 27 Officers should be sensitive to the tendency of such individuals to defer to authority figures.

28 *e. People affected by substance-related impairments.* A good-faith effort should similarly  
 29 be made to identify persons affected by temporary or long-term effects of substances, including  
 30 alcohol and drugs. Such individuals should receive any needed monitoring and medical treatment  
 31 before questioning proceeds.

**REPORTERS' NOTES**

1           The questioning of members of vulnerable populations should proceed quite differently,  
2 from beginning to end, than the questioning of other, non-vulnerable individuals. Although judicial  
3 rulings have long expressed concerns with the questioning of individuals such as intellectually  
4 disabled persons and juveniles, no clear or consistent guidance has been offered to law  
5 enforcement from the courts. As a preliminary matter, individuals who belong to such populations  
6 should be identified. Screening instruments should be developed to assist in doing so, and  
7 resources should be made available to law enforcement, such as consulting mental-health  
8 professionals or social workers experienced with juveniles or other populations, as should  
9 resources to accommodate non-English speakers and the hearing impaired.

10           Persons that belong to vulnerable populations may not understand what they are told by  
11 officers during provision of warnings or during questioning, particularly when legal or technical  
12 language is used. This includes comprehending the *Miranda* warnings. Jessica Owen-Kostelnik,  
13 et al., *Testimony and Interrogation of Minors: Assumptions About Maturity and Morality*, 61 AM.  
14 PSYCHOL. 286 (2006). Thus, particularly for juveniles, intellectually disabled individuals, and  
15 mentally ill individuals, officers should read, in addition to their standard warnings, simplified  
16 *Miranda* warnings that require only a grade- and individual-appropriate comprehension level.  
17 They should ensure that any waiver is obtained clearly and definitively. Officers should tailor their  
18 questions to the person's age, maturity, level of education, and mental ability. Written materials  
19 cannot be relied upon fully for persons, such as juveniles, who enter the criminal-justice system  
20 with lower-than-average reading ability. Officers should avoid police or legal jargon when  
21 speaking to members of vulnerable populations; use short, simple words and sentences; and use  
22 non-leading questions that elicit a narrative response. The admonition about minimizing  
23 deception in § 11.04 is particularly pertinent here. Officers should not make promises or threats  
24 when speaking to members of vulnerable populations. See also RESTATEMENT OF THE LAW,  
25 CHILDREN AND THE LAW § 14.21 (AM. LAW INST., Tentative Draft No. 1, 2018) (describing  
26 requirement of a knowing, intelligent, and voluntary waiver by juveniles). Courts should carefully  
27 evaluate not only age, but the intelligence of a juvenile, as well as other circumstances. See, e.g.,  
28 id. at Reporters' Notes to § 14.21 (surveying cases). As a result, great care should be taken to  
29 ensure a knowing, intelligent, and voluntary waiver of rights.

30           Research on juveniles in particular has shown that juveniles are far more likely to conform  
31 to authority, including officers, and comply when asked to do so, whether the officers are being  
32 truthful or not. Phillip R. Costanzo & Marvin E. Shaw, *Conformity as a Function of Age Level*, 37  
33 CHILD DEV. 967 (1966); BARRY C. FELD, KIDS, COPS, AND CONFESSIONS: INSIDE THE  
34 INTERROGATION ROOM 58 (2012). As one survey observed: "Archival analyses of false  
35 confessions, surveys, and laboratory experiments have shown that juveniles are at increased risk  
36 of falsely confessing." Christian A. Meissner, Christopher E. Kelly & Skye A. Woestehoff,  
37 *Improving Effectiveness of Suspect Interrogations*, 11 ANN. REV. L. & SOC. SCI. 211, 214 (2015).  
38 Substantial research has documented the risk that juveniles will falsely confess due to their  
39 increased likelihood of complying with authority without understanding the consequences of their

1 decisions. Thomas Grisso et al., *Juveniles' Competence to Stand Trial: A Comparison of*  
 2 *Adolescents' and Adults' Capacities as Trial Defendants*, 27 L. & HUM. BEHAV. 333 (2003); Gisli  
 3 H. Gudjonsson et al., *Custodial Interrogation, False Confession and Individual Differences: A*  
 4 *National Study among Icelandic Youth*, 41 PERSONAL. & INDIVID. DIFFER. 49 (2006); Ingrid Candel  
 5 et al., *"I hit the shift-key and then the computer crashed": Children and False Admissions*, 38  
 6 PERSONALITY & INDIVID. DIFFER. 1381 (2005); Allison D. Redlich & Gail S. Goodman, *Taking*  
 7 *Responsibility for an Act Not Committed: The Influence of Age and Suggestibility*, 27 LAW & HUM.  
 8 BEHAV. 141 (2003).

9 As a result, judicial rulings have long reflected concern about juvenile interrogations. The  
 10 U.S. Supreme Court in *J.D.B. v. North Carolina*, 131 S. Ct. 2394 (2011), held that a juvenile's age  
 11 must be considered in examining whether the juvenile should have been deemed in police custody.  
 12 Questioning by school resource officers or other government officials also may be considered as  
 13 a factor that indicates to a juvenile that it is a custodial situation. In *re Welfare of G.S.P.*, 610  
 14 N.W.2d 651 (Minn. Ct. App. 2000). In rulings concerning life without parole, the Supreme Court  
 15 has found states cannot impose mandatory life-without-parole sentences on juvenile offenders,  
 16 noting the particular danger that juveniles may confess falsely. *Miller v. Alabama*, 132 S. Ct. 2455  
 17 (2012). Courts have held that police stations are inherently coercive for some juveniles. *Jeffrey v.*  
 18 *State*, 38 S.W.3d 847, 857 (Tex. Ct. App. 2001); *United States v. IMM*, 747 F.3d 754, 767 (9th  
 19 Cir. 2014). All of those rulings support minimizing the questioning of juveniles, and approaching  
 20 any such questioning, and particularly interrogations, with great sensitivity.

21 The Restatement of the Law, Children and the Law, provides as follows:

22 § 14.20 Rights of a Juvenile in Custody; Definition of Custody

23 (a) A juvenile in custody has the right to the assistance of counsel and the right to  
 24 remain silent when questioned about the juvenile's involvement in criminal activity by a  
 25 law enforcement officer.

26 (b) A juvenile is in custody if, under the circumstances of the questioning:

27 (1) a reasonable juvenile of the suspect's age would feel that his or her  
 28 freedom of movement was substantially restricted such that the juvenile was not at  
 29 liberty to terminate the interview, and

30 (2) the officer is aware that the individual being questioned is a juvenile or  
 31 a reasonable officer would have been aware that the individual is not an adult.

32 RESTATEMENT OF THE LAW, CHILDREN AND THE LAW § 14.20 (AM. LAW INST., T.D. No. 1, 2018).

33 Officers should make every effort to notify parents or guardians prior to any questioning  
 34 of a juvenile. Parents should be offered the opportunity to be present whenever a juvenile is  
 35 questioned, taken into custody, or charged. Parents should consult with the juvenile's attorney  
 36 before making any recommendations that their child speak to law enforcement. However, a  
 37 parent's consent is neither necessary nor sufficient for the juvenile's waiver of these rights.

38 While officers should be able to identify non-English speakers, hearing-impaired  
 39 individuals, and many, if not most, juveniles, identifying people with mental illness and people  
 40 with intellectual disability can sometimes pose a real challenge for officers who are not trained

1 mental-health professionals. Yet, many of those individuals known to have confessed falsely  
2 possessed such mental-health problems. It has been long known that such individuals are more  
3 vulnerable to police coercion, but few agencies have responded to such awareness with appropriate  
4 policies and training. Finlay & Lyons, *Acquiescence in Interviews with People Who Have Mental*  
5 *Retardation*, 40 MENTAL RETARDATION 14 (2002). One noteworthy agency that has done so is  
6 Florida’s Broward County Sheriff’s Office. See Broward County Sheriff’s Office, G.O. 01-33  
7 (Nov. 17, 2001) (detailed policy concerning interrogation of suspects with developmental  
8 disabilities, including guidelines for interrogation and post-confession analysis).

9 A person with an intellectual disability is defined as having “significantly subaverage  
10 general intellectual functioning, existing concurrently [at the same time] with deficits in adaptive  
11 behavior and manifested during the developmental period, that adversely affects . . . educational  
12 performance,” under the Individuals with Disabilities Education Act (IDEA). Such disability can  
13 be difficult to recognize without visual cues, since some people are mildly affected. See The Arc,  
14 Introduction to Intellectual Disability, at <http://www.thearc.org/page.aspx?pid=2448>.

15 Mental illness refers to a wide range of mental disorders or health conditions. Severe  
16 mental illness, for example, is defined as a mental, behavioral, or emotional disorder, diagnosable  
17 currently or diagnosed within the past year, that meets criteria in the current Diagnostic and  
18 Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, and that results in a “serious functional impairment, which  
19 substantially interferes with or limits one or more major life activities.” See National Institute of  
20 Mental Health, Serious Mental Illness (SMI) Among U.S. Adults, at  
21 [https://www.nimh.nih.gov/health/statistics/prevalence/serious-mental-illness-smi-among-us-](https://www.nimh.nih.gov/health/statistics/prevalence/serious-mental-illness-smi-among-us-adults.shtml)  
22 [adults.shtml](https://www.nimh.nih.gov/health/statistics/prevalence/serious-mental-illness-smi-among-us-adults.shtml). Such serious mental illnesses can include schizophrenia, paranoid or psychotic  
23 disorders, bipolar disorders, post-traumatic stress disorders, and others. Such individuals may be  
24 found competent in a criminal case and found not criminally insane, but such standards are not  
25 designed to inform whether reliable information can fairly be obtained from such individuals.

26 Finally, persons affected by substances, whether alcohol or drugs, may require monitoring  
27 or medical treatment, and should not be questioned while impaired. Many individuals suffer co-  
28 occurrence of substance abuse and mental-health needs. For an overview of a wide range of  
29 screening and assessment instruments used in the area of co-occurring mental and substance-abuse  
30 disorders, see Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration, *Screening and*  
31 *Assessment of Co-Occurring Disorders in the Justice System* (2015).

32 Many agencies do not have detailed policies on police questioning of members of  
33 vulnerable populations. Resources should be made available to develop such written policies, as  
34 well as training and supervision directed specifically at questioning of members of vulnerable  
35 populations.



**APPENDIX**  
**BLACK LETTER OF TENTATIVE DRAFT NO. 2**

**§ 1.01. Scope and Applicability of Principles**

(a) These Principles are intended to guide the conduct of all government entities whenever they search or seize persons or property, use or threaten to use force, conduct surveillance, gather and analyze evidence, or question potential witnesses or suspects. Entities that perform these functions are referred to as “agencies” throughout these Principles.

(b) A subset of these Principles is intended primarily to guide the conduct of traditional law-enforcement agencies, such as police departments, sheriffs’ offices, and federal and state investigative agencies. Entities that perform these functions are referred to as “law-enforcement agencies” throughout these Principles.

(c) These Principles are intended for consideration by an informed citizenry, and adoption as deemed appropriate by legislative bodies, courts, and agencies. They are not intended to create or impose any legal obligations absent such formal adoption, and they are not intended to be a restatement of governing law, including state or federal constitutional law.

**§ 1.02. Goals of Policing**

The goals of policing are to promote a safe and secure society, to preserve the peace, to address crime, and to uphold the law.

**§ 1.03. Reducing Harm**

Agencies that exercise policing powers should, to the extent feasible, pursue the goals of policing in a way that reduces attendant or incidental harms. Toward that end, agencies should adopt rules, policies, and procedures that respect and uphold constitutional rights; guard against arbitrary or discriminatory policing; promote the preservation of life, liberty, and property; reduce the risk of injury to both officers and members of the public; ensure the accuracy of investigations; and promote the wellbeing of officers and community members alike.

**§ 1.04. Transparency and Accountability**

Agencies should, consistent with the need for confidentiality, be transparent and accountable, both internally within the agency and externally with the public.

**§ 1.05. Written Rules, Policies, and Procedures**

(a) Agencies should operate subject to clear and accessible written rules, policies, and procedures. At a minimum, agencies should have rules, policies, or procedures on all aspects of policing that meaningfully affect the rights of members of the public or implicate the public interest.

(b) Agency rules, policies, and procedures should—to the extent feasible and consistent with concern for public safety—be made available to the public, be formulated through a process that allows for officer and public input, and be subject to periodic review. The presumption is that these materials will be available to the public.

**§ 1.06. Promoting Police Legitimacy**

(a) Agencies should ensure that individuals both outside and inside the agencies are treated in a fair and impartial manner, and are given voice in the decisions that affect them.

(b) Agencies and officers should be truthful in their interactions with the public, with other government officials, and with the courts.

**§ 1.07. Community Policing**

Policing agencies should work in partnership with their communities to jointly promote public safety and community wellbeing. Agencies should adopt a comprehensive organizational strategy that promotes and facilitates police–community partnerships through officer training, patrol assignments, metrics and performance evaluation, and department programs and initiatives.



**§ 4.01. Officer-Initiated Encounters with Individuals**

An encounter is a face-to-face interaction between an officer and a member of the public, conducted for the purpose of investigating unlawful conduct or performing a caretaking function. It does not include social, non-investigative, or non-caretaking interactions between a police official and a member of the public.

Consistent with current law, this Chapter adopts the following terms and definitions:

(a) “Initial encounter”: An encounter in which the officer does nothing to impede the individual from leaving or otherwise terminating the encounter—and a reasonable person would in fact feel free to do so.

(b) “Stop”: An encounter that is brief in duration and does not constitute an arrest and that a reasonable person would not feel free to leave or otherwise terminate.

(c) “Frisk”: A pat-down search of an individual’s body during an encounter, conducted over the individual’s clothing, for the purpose of finding a weapon.

(d) “Custodial arrest”: An encounter in which an individual is taken into custody and transferred to a stationhouse or other temporary holding facility.

**§ 4.02. Justification for Encounters**

(a) Absent state or federal law to the contrary, an officer may, in any location in which the officer is lawfully present:

(1) conduct an initial encounter with an individual without any suspicion that the individual is involved in or possesses evidence of a crime;

(2) conduct a stop of an individual based on reasonable suspicion to believe that the individual is involved in or possesses evidence of a crime;

(3) issue a summons or a citation to an individual based on probable cause that a crime or a violation has been committed; and

(4) conduct a custodial arrest of an individual based on probable cause that the individual has committed a felony or a misdemeanor, so long as an arrest is permitted under state law.

(b) Agencies should ensure that officers exercise this authority consistent with §§ 4.03 to 4.07.

(c) Encounters that would not be permissible under this Section because officers lack the required level of suspicion should not occur at all, unless they are conducted consistent with the requirements of Chapter 5, dealing with suspicionless searches and seizures.

#### **§ 4.03. Ensuring the Legitimacy of Police Encounters**

(a) Officers should exercise their authority to approach, stop, and arrest individuals, recognized in § 4.02, in a manner that promotes public safety and positive police–community relations, and minimizes undue harm.

(b) Officers should establish the legitimacy of their encounters with members of the public by treating individuals with dignity and respect, explaining the basis for the officers’ actions, giving individuals an opportunity to speak and be heard, and engaging in behaviors that convey neutrality, fairness, and trustworthy motives.

(c) Agencies should ensure that officers carry out these principles through policy, recordkeeping, and training and supervision of officers.

#### **§ 4.04. Permissible Intrusions During Stops**

(a) During a stop, an officer may:

(1) request identification and make other inquiries as necessary to investigate the crimes or violations for which the officer has reasonable suspicion, or as necessary to ensure officer safety; and

(2) conduct a frisk of a person, or a protective sweep of the passenger compartment of a vehicle, based on reasonable suspicion to believe that the person is armed and dangerous.

(b) Unless probable cause develops during the encounter, the encounter should terminate upon completion of these investigative efforts.

#### **§ 4.05. Minimizing Intrusiveness of Stops and Arrests**

(a) An officer should make an arrest or issue a citation only when doing so directly advances the goal of public safety. When authorized under governing law, an officer should issue a citation in lieu of a custodial arrest, or a warning in lieu of a citation, unless the situation cannot be effectively resolved using the less intrusive means.

**(b) In conducting a stop or arrest, officers should minimize undue intrusions on the liberty, time, and bodily integrity of the person stopped.**

**(c) Legislatures and agencies should promote the use of less intrusive sanctions, and should consider restricting the use of arrests for certain categories of offenses.**

#### **§ 4.06. Consent Searches**

**(a) During any encounter, an officer may ask for permission to search a person or a person's property.**

**(b) Agencies should consider adopting policies to limit officers' use of consent searches, including by:**

**(1) prohibiting officers from seeking consent to search absent reasonable suspicion to believe that the search will turn up evidence of a crime or violation;**

**(2) requiring officers to explain why they want to conduct a search and that the individual has the right to refuse consent; and**

**(3) requiring officers to obtain and document, either in writing or in some other reliable form such as body-worn-camera video, acknowledgement that consent was sought and provided.**

**(c) The scope of a consent search should be no broader than necessary to achieve the investigative objective motivating the request for consent.**

#### **§ 4.07. Searches Incident to a Lawful Custodial Arrest**

**(a) A search incident to a lawful custodial arrest may only be conducted to protect the safety of officers or others, or to prevent the destruction of evidence.**

**(b) Agencies should develop policies to ensure that searches incident to arrest are no broader than necessary to serve these purposes, and that they are not used as pretext to look for evidence of a crime or violation that is unrelated to the offense for which the individual was arrested.**

**(c) A search conducted at the time of arrest generally should be limited to a pat-down search of the arrestee and a search of the immediately surrounding area from which the arrestee could access a weapon or evidence. Agencies should limit the use of more intrusive**

searches to circumstances in which there is reasonable suspicion to believe that the arrestee is concealing a weapon or evidence that would not be uncovered through a pat-down search.

**(d) An officer may conduct a more thorough search of the arrestee’s person or property after transport to the stationhouse or to a detention facility. Such search should either:**

**(1) consistent with Chapter 5, be conducted pursuant to a written policy that specifies the scope of the search and is applied evenhandedly, see §§ 5.01-5.06; or**

**(2) be based on reasonable suspicion, documented in advance, that the search will turn up evidence or contraband.**

### **§ 10.01. General Principles for Eyewitness Identification Procedures**

**Agencies should be cognizant of the scientific research regarding eyewitness perception and memory, and the limits of eyewitness evidence.**

### **§ 10.02. Eyewitness Identification Procedures**

**Police agencies should adopt standard, written eyewitness identification procedures to regulate the use of showups, lineups, photo arrays, and any other eyewitness identification techniques they employ, whether in the field or the station. Agencies should ensure that the specific procedures they use to test the memory of an eyewitness are informed by extant research. Those procedures should include:**

**(a) direction to conduct any identification as early as possible in the course of an investigation;**

**(b) instructions to explain the procedure to the eyewitness in easily understood terms;**

**(c) procedures for fairly selecting non-suspect or “filler” persons or images to display to the eyewitness;**

**(d) procedures for presenting persons or images to the eyewitness in a nonsuggestive manner;**

**(e) procedures for documenting any identification or nonidentification by the eyewitness; and**

**(f) procedures that employ sequential or simultaneous presentation of photos in photo lineups.**

**§ 10.03. Threshold for Conducting Eyewitness Identifications**

**Policing agencies should not conduct eyewitness identifications unless they have:**

**(a) a strong basis to believe that the suspect was the culprit and should therefore be presented to the eyewitness, and**

**(b) a strong basis to believe that the eyewitness can reliably make an identification.**

**§ 10.04. Showup Procedures**

**Agencies should minimize the use of showup procedures and should adopt standard procedures for conducting prompt showups in a neutral manner and location.**

**§ 10.05. Blind or Blinded Procedures**

**For all identification procedures other than showups, agencies should adopt procedures in which the person administering the identification procedure does not know which person is the suspect. There are two options:**

**(a) blind procedures, in which the person who administers the procedure does not know the suspect; or**

**(b) blinded procedures, in which the person who administers the procedure cannot see which persons or photographs the suspect is examining. This can be accomplished with techniques such as the use of folders, or computerized presentation of images, that shield the images from the person administering the procedure.**

**§ 10.06. Obtaining and Documenting Eyewitness Confidence Statements**

**Agencies should ask eyewitnesses to express verbally how confident they are in their identification at the time it is made.**

**§ 10.07. Reinforcement or Feedback**

Officers should not provide feedback, encouragement, or reinforcement to eyewitnesses before, during, or after an identification procedure.

**§ 10.08. Recording Eyewitness Identification Procedures**

As a matter of standard practice, eyewitness identification procedures should be recorded when feasible.

**§ 11.01. Objectives of Police Questioning**

The goal of police questioning is to obtain accurate and reliable information, while seeking to minimize the amount of undue coercion used and treating persons with dignity and fairness.

**§ 11.02. Recording of Police Questioning**

Written policies should set out the procedures for the recording of questioning, and for the disclosure and the retention of recorded evidence, and should provide that:

- (a) absent exigent circumstances, officers should record questioning of suspects in its entirety;
- (b) officers should record questioning of witnesses whenever feasible; and
- (c) in situations in which recording is not conducted, officers should document questioning, taking notes contemporaneously when possible, and memorializing conversations immediately thereafter.

**§ 11.03. Informing Persons of Their Rights Prior to Questioning**

Officers should inform suspects of their right to refrain from answering and their right to counsel, and ensure that any waivers of those rights are meaningfully made. Any invocation of rights must be respected, and if there is any uncertainty as to whether rights are being invoked, officers should take the time to clarify that. Waivers of rights should be documented using appropriate agency forms, and must be recorded in accordance with § 11.02.

**§ 11.04. Conducting Police Questioning**

**When questioning individuals, officers should:**

- (a) minimize the length of questioning;**
- (b) avoid leading questions and disclosing details that are not publicly known;**
- (c) avoid threats of harm to the individual or others or, conversely, avoid making promises of benefits to the individual or others;**
- (d) avoid the use of deceptive techniques that are likely to confuse or pressure suspects in ways that might undermine accuracy of evidence;**
- (e) ensure the individual has access to basic physical and personal needs, including food, water, rest, and restrooms; and**
- (f) not question the individual in an environment that is unduly uncomfortable.**

**§ 11.05. Questioning of Members of Vulnerable Populations**

**(a) Officers should assess carefully a person's background, age, education, language access, mental impairment, and physical condition, in order to determine vulnerability to coercion and suggestion.**

**(b) Officers should minimize the need to question vulnerable people and members of vulnerable populations, such as juveniles, people with mental illness, people with intellectual disability, and people affected by substance-related impairment. If they do question members of vulnerable populations, they should do so with minimal coercion and the utmost care.**

**(c) Hearing-impaired individuals or non-English-speaking individuals should be provided with necessary assistance or translators prior to the reading of rights or any questioning.**

**(d) A juvenile age 14 or younger may give a valid waiver of the right to counsel and the right to remain silent only after meaningful consultation with and in the presence of counsel.**





**APPENDIX B**  
**OTHER RELEVANT BLACK-LETTER TEXT**

**§ 7.01. Scope and Applicability of Principles (T.D. No. 1 Revised) (approved in 2017)**  
**(formerly § 5.01)**

The following Principles:

- (a) are intended to guide the conduct of all agencies that possess the lawful authority to use force, which are referred to throughout this Chapter as “agencies”;
- (b) are intended for consideration by an informed citizenry, and for adoption as deemed appropriate by legislative bodies, courts, and agencies;
- (c) are not intended to create or impose any legal obligations or bases for legal liability absent an expression of such intent by a legislative body, court, or agency.

**§ 7.02. Objectives of the Use of Force (T.D. No. 1 Revised) (approved in 2017)**  
**(formerly § 5.01 in T.D. No. 1 and § 5.02 in T.D. No. 1 Revised)**

Officers should use physical force only for the purpose of effecting a lawful seizure (including an arrest or detention), carrying out a lawful search, preventing imminent physical harm to themselves or others, or preventing property damage or loss. Agencies should promote this objective through written policies, training, supervision, and reporting and review of use-of-force incidents.

**§ 7.03. Minimum Force Necessary (T.D. No. 1 Revised) (approved in 2017)**  
**(formerly § 5.02 in T.D. No. 1 and § 5.03 in T.D. No. 1 Revised)**

In instances in which force is used, officers should use the minimum force necessary to perform their duties safely. Agencies should promote this goal through written policies, training, supervision, and reporting and review of use-of-force incidents.

**§ 7.04. De-escalation and Force Avoidance (T.D. No. 1 Revised) (approved in 2017)****(formerly § 5.03 in T.D. No. 1 and § 5.04 in T.D. No. 1 Revised)**

Agencies should require, through written policy, that officers actively seek to avoid using force whenever possible and appropriate by employing techniques such as de-escalation. Agencies should reinforce this Principle through written policies, training, supervision, and reporting and review of use-of-force incidents.

**§ 7.05. Proportional Use of Force (T.D. No. 1 Revised) (approved in 2017)****(formerly § 5.04 in T.D. No. 1 and § 5.05 in T.D. No. 1 Revised)**

Officers should not use more force than is proportional to the legitimate law-enforcement objective at stake. In furtherance of this objective:

(a) deadly force should not be used except in response to an immediate threat of serious physical harm or death to officers, or a significant threat of serious physical harm or death to others;

(b) non-deadly force should not be used if its impact is likely to be out of proportion to the threat of harm to officers or others or to the extent of property damage threatened. When non-deadly force is used to carry out a search or seizure (including an arrest or detention), such force only may be used as is proportionate to the threat posed in performing the search or seizure, and to the societal interest at stake in seeing that the search or seizure is performed.

**§ 7.06. Instructions and Warnings (T.D. No. 1 Revised) (approved in 2017)****(formerly § 5.05 in T.D. No. 1 and § 5.06 in T.D. No. 1 Revised)**

Officers should provide clear instructions and warnings whenever feasible before using force. Agencies should promote this goal through written policies, training, supervision, and reporting and review of use-of-force incidents.